

# Index

## A

### Abbreviations

- acronyms, 1.3.2.1.
- symbols and, 1.2.2.1.
- terms and, 1.4.1.2.[A]

### Acceptable solutions, 1.1.2.1., 1.2.1.1.[A]

### Access

- attics or roof spaces, 3.6.4.4., 9.19.2.1.
- chimneys, 6.3.3.4.
- crawl spaces, 3.6.4.6., 9.18.2.1., 9.18.4.1.
- fire dampers, 3.1.8.10.
- hatchways to roof, 9.19.2.1.
- horizontal service spaces, 3.6.4.5., 9.18.2.1., 9.18.4.1., 9.19.2.1.
- HVAC equipment, 6.2.1.6., 9.33.4.4.
- smoke dampers, 3.1.8.11.

### Access to exits

- capacity, 3.3.1.17., 9.9.3.
- corridors in assembly occupancy, 3.3.2.6.
- corridor width, 3.3.1.9.
- dead-end corridors, 9.9.7.3.
- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- dimensions, 9.9.3.
- doors, 3.3.1.13., 3.3.2.7., 9.9.6., 9.9.7.4.
- doors, sliding, 3.3.1.12.
- doors, transparent, 3.3.1.19.
- dwelling units, 9.9.9.
- flame-spread rating, 9.10.21.6.
- within floor areas, 3.3.1.3.
- headroom clearance, 3.3.1.8., 9.9.3.4.
- independent access to, 9.9.7.5.
- lighting, 9.9.12.2.
- podiums, terraces, platforms and contained open spaces, 9.9.7.1.
- residential occupancy, 3.3.4.4.
- roofs, 3.3.1.3., 9.9.7.1.
- service rooms, 9.9.7.5.
- suites, 9.9.7.2.
- transparent panels, 3.3.1.19.
- travel distance, 9.9.7.6.
- when exits are means of egress, 9.9.7.

### Access for firefighting

- access routes, 3.2.5.4., 3.2.5.5., 3.2.5.6.
- basements, 3.2.5.2., 9.10.20.2.
- and building size determination, 1.3.3.4.[A]
- provisions, 9.10.20.
- roof area, 3.2.5.3.
- storeys below ground, 3.2.2.15.
- storeys above grade, 3.2.5.1.
- street frontages, 3.2.2.10.

### Accessibility

- floor surfaces, 3.8.3.2.
- lavatories, 3.8.2.8., 3.8.3.15.
- parking areas, 3.8.2.5.
- path of travel (see Path of travel, accessible)
- ramps, 3.8.3.5.
- showers, 3.8.2.8., 3.8.3.16.
- signs, 3.8.2.10., 3.8.3.9.
- soap and towel dispensers, 3.8.3.15., 3.8.3.16.
- spaces in seating areas, 3.8.2.3., 3.8.3.21.
- telephone shelves, 3.8.2.11., 3.8.3.20.
- universal washrooms, 3.8.2.8., 3.8.3.12.
- urinals, 3.8.2.8., 3.8.3.14.
- vestibules, 3.8.3.6.
- washrooms, 3.8.2.8., 3.8.3.9., 3.8.3.11., 3.8.3.15.
- water closets, 3.8.3.11., 3.8.3.13.

### Access openings

- construction barricades, 8.2.1.3.
- HVAC systems, 6.8.1.1.

### Access panels, 3.2.5.1., 9.10.20.1.

### Access routes

- design, 3.2.5.6.
- location, 3.2.5.5., 9.10.20.3.
- need for, 3.2.5.4.
- self-service storage buildings, 3.9.2.3.
- as streets, 3.2.2.10.

### Adfreezing, 1.4.1.2.[A], 4.2.4.4.

### Adhesives

- ceramic wall tiles, 9.29.10.3.
- ducts, 3.6.5.4., 9.33.6.4.

### Administration of the Code, 2.2.[C]

#### Admixtures

- concrete, 9.3.1.8.
- mortar and grout, 9.20.3.2.

### Aggregate

- for built-up-roofing, 9.26.11.1., 9.26.11.4.
- for concrete, 9.3.1.1., 9.3.1.4., 9.3.1.7.
- for mortar, 5.9.1.1., 9.20.3.1., 9.20.3.2., 9.29.10.2.
- for stucco, 9.28.2.2., 9.28.5.1.

[A] – Reference occurs in Division A of Volume 1.

[C] – Reference occurs in Division C of Volume 1.

All other references occur in Division B of Volume 1.

- Air
  - circulation, 6.3.2.7., 9.33.6.7.
  - distribution, 9.33.6.11.
  - flow through and around insulation, 5.3.1.3., 9.19.1.3., 9.25.2.3., 9.25.2.4.
  - leakage, 3.1.8.4., 5.1.1.1., 5.4.1.1., 5.9.3.4., 5.9.4.1., 9.25.5.1.
  - leakage resistance, 5.4.1.1., 5.4.1.2., 9.13.4., 9.18.6.2., 9.25.5.1.
  - makeup, 6.3.2.8., 9.32.3.8.
  - permeance, 5.4.1.2., 9.25.5.1.
  - tempering, 9.32.3.4., 9.32.3.8.
  - transfer, 5.1.1.1., 5.2.1.3.
- Air barrier systems
  - airtightness, 5.4.1.1., 9.36.2.9., 9.36.2.10.
  - assemblies in contact with the ground, 9.13.4., 9.25.3.6.
  - continuity, 5.4.1.2., 9.25.3.3., 9.36.2.9.
  - crawl space floors, 9.18.6.2.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - deflections, 5.2.2.1.
  - energy efficiency, 9.36.2.9.
  - environmental loads, 5.1.4.1.
  - environmental separation, 5.1.1.1.
  - floors-on-ground, 9.18.6.2., 9.25.3.6.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.25.3.
  - installation, 9.23.2.2., 9.25.3.3.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1., 9.18.6.2., 9.25.3.2., 9.25.3.6.
  - properties, 9.25.3.1., 9.25.5.1.
  - properties of, 5.4.1.2., 9.25.3.2.
  - repair garages, 9.10.9.17.
  - requirement for, 9.25.3.1.
  - storage garages, 9.10.9.16.
- Airborne sound rating, 3.3.4.6., 5.8.1.2., 9.11.
- Air-conditioning systems and equipment
  - access, 6.2.1.6., 6.8.1.1., 9.33.4.4.
  - cleaning, 6.2.1.6., 9.33.4.4.
  - continuity of insulation, 9.36.3.5.
  - cooling units, 6.6.1.1.
  - design, 6.2.1., 9.33.1.1., 9.33.3.2., 9.33.4.1., 9.33.5.3.
  - energy efficiency, 9.36.
  - fire safety characteristics, 6.9.1.1., 9.33.6.
  - installation, 6.2.1., 6.6.1.1., 9.32.3.2., 9.33.1.1., 9.33.4., 9.33.5.2., 9.33.9.1.
  - installation standards, 6.2.1.5., 9.33.5.2., 9.33.5.3., 9.33.6.7.
  - performance requirements, 9.36.3.10.
  - protection from freezing, 6.2.1.6., 9.33.4.5.
  - structural movement, 4.1.8.18., 6.2.1.4., 9.33.4.7.
  - system pressure, 6.2.1.3., 9.33.4.6.
  - temperature controls, 9.36.3.6.
- Air duct systems
  - application of Code, 6.3.2.1.
  - clearance of ducts and plenums, 6.3.2.6.
  - connections, 6.3.2.4.
  - drain pans, 6.3.2.2.
  - duct coverings and linings, 6.3.2.5.
  - interconnection, 6.3.2.7.
  - makeup air, 6.3.2.8.
  - materials, 6.3.2.3.
  - supply, return, intake and exhaust air openings, 6.3.2.9.
- Air filters, 6.8.1.3., 9.33.6.14.
- Air intakes
  - area, 9.32.3.13.
  - connection, 9.33.6.6.
  - grilles, 6.3.2.9., 9.33.6.10.
  - labeling, 9.32.3.13.
  - location, 6.3.2.9., 9.32.3.13., 9.33.6.10., 9.33.6.12.
  - protection, 6.3.2.9., 9.32.3.13., 9.33.6.10.
- Air outlets
  - area, 9.32.3.13.
  - capacity, 9.33.6.11.
  - diffusers, 9.33.6.10., 9.33.6.11.
  - grilles, 6.3.2.9., 9.32.3.13., 9.33.6.10.
  - labeling, 9.32.3.13.
  - location, 6.3.2.9., 9.32.3.13., 9.33.6.10., 9.33.6.11.
  - protection, 6.3.2.9., 9.32.3.13., 9.33.6.10.
  - warm air heating, 9.33.6.10., 9.33.6.11.
- Air quality, emergency power supply, 3.2.7.9.
- Air-supported structures
  - clearance to flammable material, 3.1.6.4.
  - clearance to other structures, 3.1.6.3.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - electrical systems, 3.1.6.7.
  - emergency air supply, 3.1.6.6.
  - fire protection, 9.10.1.3.
  - fire safety restrictions, 3.1.6.2.
  - flame resistance, 3.1.6.5.
  - means of egress, 3.1.6.1.
  - roof coverings, 3.1.15.2.
  - structural design basis, 4.4.1.1.
- Airtightness
  - building envelope, 9.36.2.9., 9.36.2.10.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1.
  - requirement for, 5.4.1.1.
  - windows, doors and skylights, 5.9.2.3., 9.7.4.

- Air washers, 6.3.2.16.
- Aisles
- with fixed seats, 3.3.2.5.
  - within floor areas, 3.3.1.10.
  - leading to exits, 3.4.2.5.
  - minimum clear width, 3.3.2.1.
  - outdoor places of assembly, 3.3.2.11.
  - with steps, handrails for, 3.3.2.10.
  - width, 3.4.3.2.
- Alarm signal
- audibility, 3.2.4.17., 3.2.4.18.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - design, 3.2.4.4.
  - high buildings, 3.2.6.7.
  - silencing, 3.2.4.6.
  - system monitoring, 3.2.4.15.
- Alert signal
- audibility, 3.2.4.17., 3.2.4.18.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - design, 3.2.4.4.
  - high buildings, 3.2.6.7.
  - system monitoring, 3.2.4.15.
- Alterations to buildings, 1.1.1.1.[A], 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Alternative materials, 1.2.2.1.[A]
- Alternative solutions, 1.2.1.1.[A], 2.3.1.[C]
- Aluminum
- flashing, 9.20.13.1., 9.26.4.2., 9.27.3.7., 9.28.1.5.
  - nails, 9.26.2.3.
  - roofing, 9.26.13.1.
  - siding, 9.27.11.1.
  - structural design basis, 4.3.5.
- Ammonium nitrate, 3.3.6.6.
- Anchorage
- anchor bolts, 9.20.11.6., 9.20.17.6.
  - columns, 9.23.6.2., 9.35.4.3.
  - concrete stairs, 9.8.10.2.
  - cornices, 9.20.11.5.
  - floors, 9.20.11.
  - foundations, 9.23.6., 9.35.4.3.
  - framing, 9.23.6.
  - horizontal force factor, 4.1.8.18.
  - lateral loads, 9.23.6.1.
  - masonry, 9.20.9., 9.20.11.
  - masonry walls to wood-frame construction, 9.20.11.3., 9.20.11.4.
  - roofs, 9.20.11., 9.20.17.6.
  - sills, 9.20.11.5.
  - small buildings, 9.23.6.3.
  - walls, 9.20.11., 9.23.3.4.
- Anhydrous ammonia, storage, 3.3.6.3.
- Annual energy consumption
- building envelope, 9.36.5.6.
  - climatic data calculations, 9.36.5.5.
  - definition, 9.36.5.2.
  - HVAC systems, 9.36.5.7.
  - modeling, proposed house, 9.36.5.9. - 9.36.5.12.
  - modeling, reference house, 9.36.5.13. - 9.36.5.16.
  - performance compliance, 9.36.5.3.
  - performance compliance calculations, 9.36.5.4.
  - service water heating systems, 9.36.5.8.
- Annunciators, fire alarm, 3.2.4.8., 3.2.4.9., 3.2.4.15., 3.2.5.14., 3.2.7.10.
- Antennas and antenna-supporting structures
- earthquake loads and effects, 4.1.8.1.
  - wind loads, 4.1.7.11.
- Apparent sound transmission class (ASTC)
- calculation of, 5.8.1.4., 5.8.1.5.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Appliances
- (see also Heating appliances; Heating systems and equipment; Heating, ventilating and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems and equipment)
  - in access to exit, 3.3.1.2.
  - air-conditioning, 6.2.1., 9.33.4.1., 9.33.5.2.
  - characteristics, 1.2.2.1.[A]
  - cooling, 6.2.1., 6.6.1.1., 9.33.4.1., 9.33.5.2., 9.33.9.1.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - in exit, 3.4.4.4.
  - exterior, 3.6.1.5.
  - fuel-fired, 3.6.2.1., 9.10.10.4.
  - heating, 6.2.1.1., 9.33.4.1., 9.33.5.2.
  - location, 3.6.1.5., 6.3.2.17., 6.4.1.1., 9.10.10.4.
  - in means of egress, 9.9.5.7.
  - outdoor location, 6.2.1.6., 6.3.2.17., 6.4.1.2.
  - protection from freezing, 6.2.1.6., 9.33.4.5.
  - roof-top, 3.6.1.5., 3.6.2.1., 6.4.1.2., 9.10.1.3.
  - solid-fuel-burning, 3.6.2.1., 6.2.1.5., 9.33.5.3.
  - storage, 1.2.2.2.[A]
  - used, 1.2.2.3.[A]
  - ventilating, 6.2.1., 9.32.3.2.
- Application of Building Code
- divisions A, B, C, 1.3.[A]
  - factory-constructed buildings, 1.1.1.1.[A]
  - farm buildings, 1.1.1.1.[A]
  - new buildings, 1.1.1.1.[A]
  - objectives, 2.1.1.[A], 3.2.[A]

- seasonally and intermittently occupied buildings, 9.1.1.1.
  - Arches
    - fire-resistance ratings, 9.10.8.3.
    - in storeys below ground, 3.2.2.15.
    - supporting floor above basement, 3.2.1.4.
    - supporting masonry over openings, 9.20.5.2.
    - supporting service room/space, 3.1.7.5.
  - Arch roofs, snow and rain loads, 4.1.6.10.
  - Areas of refuge, 3.3.3.6.
  - Areas and spaces
    - design, 9.5.
    - dimensions, 9.5.1.1.
  - Arena-type buildings
    - building classification, 3.1.2.3.
    - building height exceptions, 3.2.1.1.
    - roof assemblies, 3.2.2.17.
    - seating, 3.3.2.2.
  - Artesian groundwater, 1.4.1.2.[A], 4.2.5.5.
  - Asbestos in air distribution systems and equipment, 6.2.1.7., 9.33.4.8.
  - Assembly areas
    - loads on floor or roof, 4.1.5.3.
    - loads on tributary areas, 4.1.5.8.
    - sway forces and load, 4.1.5.10.
  - Assembly occupancy (Group A)
    - air-supported structure as, 3.1.6.6.
    - assistive listening devices, 3.8.2.9., 3.8.3.18.
    - building classification, 3.1.2.1.
    - corridors, 3.3.2.6.
    - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
    - doors, 3.3.2.7.
    - fire protection, 3.2.2.17., 3.2.2.20. - 3.2.2.35., 9.10.1.3.
    - fire safety within floor areas, 3.3.1., 3.3.2.1.
    - location of smoke/fire dampers, 3.1.8.7.
    - occupant load, 3.1.17.1.
    - signals to fire department, 3.2.4.7.
    - visual alarm signals, 3.2.4.19.
    - washrooms, 3.7.2.
    - wheelchair spaces, 3.8.2.3.
  - Assistive listening devices, 3.8.2.9., 3.8.3.18.
  - Atomizers, 6.3.2.16.
  - Attendant booths, 6.3.1.4.
  - Attics or roof spaces
    - access, 3.6.4.4., 9.19.2.
    - clearances, 9.19.1.3.
    - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
    - exterior wall enclosing, 3.2.3.3.
    - fire blocks, 3.1.11.1., 3.1.11.5., 9.10.16.1.
    - fire protection, 9.10.12.4.
    - foamed plastics in, 3.1.4.2., 9.10.17.10.
    - housing and small buildings, 9.19.
    - insulation, 9.25.2.4.
    - loads, 4.1.5.3., 9.4.2.4.
    - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.3.
    - service spaces, 3.6.1.1.
    - soffits protection, 3.2.3.16.
    - venting, 5.3.1.2., 6.3.1.2., 9.19.1.
  - Audible signal devices, 3.2.4.17., 3.2.4.18.
  - Auditoriums, 3.2.2.21., 3.2.2.22.
  - Authority having jurisdiction, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - Automatic locking devices, 3.3.4.5.
  - Automatic sprinkler systems (see Sprinkler systems)
- B**
- Backdraft prevention, 6.3.2.10., 9.32.3.13.
  - Backfill
    - (see also Fill)
    - excavations, 9.12.3.
    - material, 4.2.5.8., 9.12.3.3.
  - Backfilling
    - (see also Fill)
    - beneath concrete stairs, 9.8.10.3.
    - beneath floors on grade, 4.2.5.8.
    - beneath footings, 4.2.5.8.
    - beneath foundations, 4.2.5.8.
    - grading, 9.12.3.2.
    - placement, 4.2.5.8., 9.12.3.1.
    - review, 4.2.2.3.
  - Bacteria, minimizing growth of, 6.3.1.6., 6.3.2.15.
  - Balance stops, 9.33.6.9.
  - Balconies
    - as access to exit, 9.9.9.3.
    - concealed spaces in, 3.1.11.5.
    - doors and door hardware, 3.3.1.13.
    - earthquake load and effects, 4.1.8.1.
    - exception to travel limit, 9.9.9.1.
    - exterior, 3.2.2.11.
    - guards around, 3.3.1.18., 9.8.8.
    - horizontal exits, 3.4.6.10.
    - limiting distance, 3.2.3.6.
    - loads on floor or roof, 4.1.5.3., 4.1.5.4., 9.4.2.3.
    - occupant load, 3.1.17.1.
    - snow loads, 9.4.2.3.
    - sprinkler systems, 3.2.5.12.
    - wind loads, 4.1.7.5.
  - Banks, 3.4.6.17.

- Barricades, construction and demolition sites, 8.2.1.3., 8.2.3.3.
- Barrier-free (see Accessibility)
- Barriers
- across transparent panels, 3.3.1.19.
  - preventing exit obstruction, 3.4.6.11., 9.9.11.2.
- Basements
- access, 3.2.5.2., 9.10.20.2.
  - ceiling height, 9.5.3.1.
  - crawl spaces considered as, 3.2.2.9., 9.10.8.9.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - exit signs, 3.4.5.2.
  - fire containment, 3.2.1.5.
  - fire protection, 3.2.2.15., 9.10.1.3.
  - fire-resistance of floor assemblies over, 3.2.1.4.
  - fire separations, 9.10.9.4., 9.10.9.14.
  - heating requirements, 9.33.3.1.
  - industrial occupancy (Group F), 3.3.5.3.
  - insulation, 9.25.2.2.
  - large or multi-storey, 9.10.1.3.
  - lighting, 9.34.2.3., 9.34.2.4.
  - residential occupancy (Group C), 3.2.2.47.
  - storage garages, 3.1.10.3., 3.2.1.2., 9.10.4.3.
  - supply outlets, 9.33.6.11.
- Bathroom accessories, 3.7.2.3., 3.7.2.9., 3.8.3.8., 3.8.3.11., 3.8.3.15., 3.8.3.17.
- Bathrooms
- (see also Washrooms)
  - ceiling height, 9.5.3.1.
  - doorways, 9.4.4.3.
  - flame-spread rating, 3.1.13.3.
- Bathtubs, 3.7.2.9., 3.8.3.17., 9.6.1.4.
- Beams
- bearing, 9.23.8.1.
  - built-up, 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.4., 9.23.8.3.
  - dimensions, 9.23.4.1.
  - glued-laminated, 9.23.4.1., 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.4.
  - in heavy timber construction, 3.1.4.7.
  - lumber grade, 9.3.2.1.
  - preservative treatment, 9.23.2.2., 9.23.2.3.
  - ridge, 9.23.14.8.
  - spans, 9.23.4.1., 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.4.
  - spans, maximum, 9.23.4.
  - steel, 9.23.4.3., 9.23.8.2.
  - supported on masonry or concrete, 9.10.9.9., 9.15.5., 9.20.8.3., 9.20.8.4., 9.21.5.3., 9.23.2.2., 9.23.2.3.
  - to support floors, 9.23.8.
  - wood, 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.4.
- Bearing surface, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Bedrooms
- means of egress, 9.9.10.1.
  - mechanical ventilation, 9.32.2.3.
  - natural ventilation, 9.32.2.2.
  - windows, 9.9.10.1.
- Bleachers
- aisles, 3.3.2.5.
  - guards, 3.3.2.9.
  - inspection, 4.1.5.12.
  - load analysis, 4.1.5.12.
  - locking, 4.1.5.12.
  - seats, 3.3.2.5.
  - steps, 3.3.2.5., 3.3.2.12.
- Blocking
- cladding, 9.27.5.2.
  - cladding and interior finishing materials, 9.23.10.5.
  - doors, 9.7.5.2.
  - with handrails, 9.8.7.7.
  - joists, 9.23.9.3., 9.23.9.4., 9.23.14.9.
  - nailing, 9.23.3.4.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.2.
  - rafters and joints, 9.23.14.7.
  - roof edges, 9.23.16.6., 9.23.16.7.
  - subflooring, 9.23.15.3.
  - walls, 9.23.9.8., 9.23.10.2.
- Boarding and lodging houses, 9.10.9.14.
- Boiler rooms, 3.6.2.2., 9.10.10.4.
- Boilers
- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - installation standard, 6.2.1.5.
  - performance requirements, 9.36.3.10.
- Bonding
- intersecting masonry walls, 9.20.11.2.
  - masonry, 9.20.9.
- Book shelves, 3.3.2.13.
- Braced wall bands, 1.4.1.2.[A], 9.23.13.4., 9.23.13.5.
- Braced wall panels
- anchorage, 9.23.6.1., 9.23.13.5.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - fastening, 9.23.3.4., 9.23.3.5.
  - gypsum board, 9.29.5.9.
  - lateral loads, 9.23.13.5., 9.23.13.6.
  - plywood, 9.29.6.3.
  - and wall supports, 9.23.9.8.
- Bracing, wood-frame walls, 9.23.13., 9.23.13.4., 9.23.13.5.
- Breeching, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Bridging floor joists, 9.23.9.4.

- Builder (see Constructor)
- Building area
- assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 1), 3.2.2.20.
  - assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 2), 3.2.2.23.
  - assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 3), 3.2.2.29.
  - business and personal services occupancy (Group D), 3.2.2.55.
  - care, treatment or detention occupancy (Group B Division 1), 3.2.2.36., 3.2.2.37.
  - care, treatment or detention occupancy (Group B Division 2), 3.2.2.38. - 3.2.2.41.
  - care, treatment or detention occupancy (Group B Division 3), 3.2.2.42. - 3.2.2.46.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - determination, 1.3.3.4.[A]
  - determination of fire safety requirements, 3.2.2.5.
  - high-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 1), 3.2.2.70.
  - low-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 3), 3.2.2.80.
  - medium-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 2), 3.2.2.74.
  - mercantile occupancy (Group E), 3.2.2.64.
  - residential occupancy (Group C), 3.2.2.47.
  - self-service storage buildings, 3.9.2.1.
- Building assemblies
- effective thermal resistance, 9.36.2.6.
  - fire-resistance rating, 3.1.7.5.
  - off-site review, 2.2.7.5.[C]
  - replacement options, 9.36.2.11.
  - thermal resistance calculation, 9.36.2.4.
- Building classification
- by major occupancy, 3.1.2.1., 9.10.2.
  - for wind load calculations, 4.1.7.2.
- Building, definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Building envelope
- energy efficiency, 9.36.2.
  - energy performance calculations, 9.36.5.6.
  - energy performance modeling, 9.36.5.10., 9.36.5.14.
  - replacement options, 9.36.2.11.
  - thermal resistance calculation, 9.36.2.4.
- Building height
- access route design, 3.2.5.6.
  - assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 1), 3.2.2.20.
  - assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 2), 3.2.2.23.
  - assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 3), 3.2.2.29.
  - business and personal services occupancy (Group D), 3.2.2.55., 3.2.2.57., 3.2.2.58.
  - care, treatment or detention occupancy (Group B Division 1), 3.2.2.36., 3.2.2.37.
  - care, treatment or detention occupancy (Group B Division 2), 3.2.2.38. - 3.2.2.41.
  - care, treatment or detention occupancy (Group B Division 3), 3.2.2.42. - 3.2.2.46.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - determination, 1.3.3.4.[A], 9.10.4.
  - determination of fire safety requirements, 3.2.2.5.
  - exceptions, 3.2.1.1.
  - garages as separate buildings, 9.10.4.3.
  - high-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 1), 3.2.2.70.
  - low-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 3), 3.2.2.80.
  - medium-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 2), 3.2.2.74.
  - mercantile occupancy (Group E), 3.2.2.64.
  - mezzanines excluded, 9.10.4.1.
  - mezzanines included, 9.10.4.2.
  - residential occupancy (Group C), 3.2.2.47., 3.2.2.50., 3.2.2.51.
  - roof-top enclosures excluded, 9.10.4.4.
- Building services
- accessible controls, 3.8.3.8.
  - emergency power supply, 3.2.7.9.
  - and fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.2.
  - and firewalls, 3.1.10.1.
  - penetrating fire separations and fire-rated assemblies, 3.1.9.2., 9.10.9.6.
- Building size determination
- application of Code, 1.3.3.4.[A]
  - inclusions, 9.10.4.1.
  - relative to occupancy, 9.10.8.
- Built-up roofing, 9.26.11.
- Business and personal services occupancy (Group D)
- classification, 3.1.2.1., 9.10.2.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - emergency power for fire alarm systems, 3.2.7.8.
  - emergency power for lighting, 3.2.7.4.
  - exit stairs, 9.9.4.7.
  - exposing building face, 9.10.14.5.
  - fire access route design, 3.2.5.6.
  - fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.1., 9.10.18.

fire protection, 3.2.2.55. - 3.2.2.63.  
 fire-resistance rating, 9.10.8.  
 fire safety within floor areas, 3.3.1.  
 flame-spread rating, 9.10.17.  
 occupant load, 3.1.17.1.  
 sprinkler systems, 3.2.5.12.  
 washrooms, 3.7.2.

## C

Cabinetry, around cooktops, 9.10.22.3.

### Cables

in air barrier systems, 9.36.2.10.  
 in combustible construction, 3.1.4.3.  
 elevator, 3.1.5.22.  
 in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.21.  
 penetrating fire separations, 3.1.9.3.  
 in plenums, 3.6.4.3.

Caissons (see Pile foundations)

### Calculations and analyses

heat, air and moisture transfer, 5.2.1.2., 5.2.1.3.  
 HVAC equipment and systems, 6.2.1.1., 9.33.4.1.  
 limit states design, 4.1.3.  
 snow, rain and ice load, 4.1.6.  
 structural, 2.2.4.5.[C], 4  
 wind load, 4.1.7., 5.2.1.3., 5.2.2.2.

### Canopies

fabrics, 3.1.16.1.  
 for vertically separated openings, 3.2.3.17.

Capacity of exit, 3.4.3.2.

### Carbon monoxide

alarms, 9.32.3.8., 9.32.3.9.  
 concentration, 6.3.1.4.  
 detectors, 6.3.1.4., 6.9.3.1., 9.32.3.8., 9.32.3.9.

Care, definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]

Care, treatment or detention occupancy (Group B)

building classification, 3.1.2.1.  
 definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]  
 door hold-open devices, 3.1.8.14.  
 doorway width, 3.3.3.4.  
 electromagnetic locks, 3.4.6.17.  
 emergency lighting, 3.2.7.3.  
 emergency power supply, 3.2.7.6.  
 evaporative cooling towers, 6.3.2.15.  
 fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.1., 3.2.4.18.  
 fire protection, 3.2.2.36. - 3.2.2.46.  
 fire safety within floor areas, 3.3.1., 3.3.3., 3.3.3.1.  
 location of smoke/fire dampers, 3.1.8.7.  
 occupant load, 3.1.17.1.

ramp slope maximum, 3.4.6.7.  
 as residential occupancy, 3.1.2.5.  
 self-closing door hardware, 3.1.8.13.  
 sleeping room exits, 3.4.1.6.  
 smoke alarms, 3.2.4.20.  
 smoke detectors, 3.2.4.11.  
 sprinkler systems, 3.2.2.19., 3.2.5.12.  
 visual alarm signals, 3.2.4.19.

Carpets, 3.1.13.1.

### Carports

(see also Garages)  
 columns, 9.35.4.2., 9.35.4.3.  
 concrete for floors, 9.3.1.6.  
 for dwelling units, 9.35.  
 spatial separation from other buildings, 9.10.14.4.  
 walls, 9.35.4.1., 9.35.4.3.

Catch basins, 9.14.6.4.

### Caulking

(see also Sealants)  
 for ceramic wall tile, 9.29.10.5.  
 door frames, 9.20.13.11.  
 material standards, 9.29.10.5.  
 in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.2.  
 requirements, 9.27.4., 9.27.4.1.  
 sill plates, 9.23.7.2.  
 stucco, 9.28.1.5.  
 windows and frames, 9.7.6.2., 9.20.13.11.

### Cavity walls

corbelling, 9.20.12.2.  
 definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]  
 flashing, 9.20.13.5., 9.20.13.6.  
 framing supported by, 9.20.8.2.  
 height and thickness, 9.20.6.2.  
 lateral support, 9.20.10.1.  
 mortar droppings, 9.20.13.10.  
 precipitation protection, 9.27.2.2.  
 tying, 9.20.9.4.

### Ceiling membranes

fire-resistance rating, 3.6.4.3., 9.10.3.4.  
 fire stop flaps, 9.10.13.14.  
 openings in, 3.1.9.6., 9.10.5., 9.10.9.6., 9.10.9.7.  
 suspended, 9.10.3.4.

Ceiling panels, factory-assembled, 3.1.5.7.

### Ceilings

air barrier systems, 9.25.3.  
 area, calculating, 9.36.2.3.  
 assembly used as plenum, 3.1.9.7.  
 in corridors, 3.1.13.6.  
 effective thermal resistance, 9.36.2.6.

- fastened to floor joists, 9.23.9.4.
- finish, 3.1.5.12., 9.29.
- foamed plastics in, 9.10.17.10.
- framing, 9.23.14.
- framing around openings, 9.23.14.2.
- height, 9.5.3.
- joists, 9.23.14.1., 9.23.14.7.
- thermal insulation, 9.25.1.1.
- Cement, standards for, 9.3.1.2.
- Central alarm and control facility, 3.2.4.22., 3.2.6.4., 3.2.6.7.
- Ceramic tile
  - as flooring, 9.30.6.
  - installation, 9.29.10.1.
  - as interior finish, 9.29.10.
  - subfloor, 9.23.15.5.
  - underlay, 9.23.15.5., 9.30.2.1., 9.30.2.2.
- Chases, 9.20.7.
- Children's custodial homes, 3.1.2.5., 3.2.4.3., 9.10.2.2.
- Chimneys
  - access ladders, 6.3.3.4.
  - airtightness, 9.36.2.10.
  - bracing, 9.21.4.5.
  - caps, 9.21.4.6.
  - cleanouts, 9.21.4.7.
  - clearances, 6.3.3.1., 9.21.5., 9.25.3.3.
  - concrete, 1.4.1.2.[A], 6.3.3.2., 9.21., 9.21.4.2., 9.33.10.3.
  - construction, 9.21.4.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - design of, 6.3.3.2., 9.20.2.3., 9.21., 9.33.10.3.
  - earthquake loads and effects, 4.1.8.1.
  - factory-built, 1.4.1.2.[A], 9.33.10.2.
  - fireplace, 9.21.2.4., 9.21.2.5.
  - flashing, 9.21.4.6., 9.21.4.10., 9.26.4.4., 9.26.4.6., 9.26.4.8.
  - flues, 9.21.2., 9.21.4.4.
  - footings, 9.21.4.3.
  - fuel-fired appliances, 6.3.3.1., 9.33.10.1.
  - incinerators, 9.10.10.5., 9.21.2.1.
  - lateral stability, 9.21.4.5.
  - liners (see Liners, chimney)
  - masonry, 1.4.1.2.[A], 6.3.3.2., 9.21., 9.21.4.1., 9.33.10.3.
  - metal, 6.3.3.3., 9.33.10.2.
  - saddles, 9.26.4.8.
  - sealing, 9.21.5.2.
  - venting equipment, 6.3.1.
  - walls, 9.21.1.2.
  - wall thickness, 9.21.4.8.
- Chutes
  - linen, 3.6.3.3., 9.10.1.3.
  - refuse, 3.6.3.3., 9.10.1.3.
  - sprinklers, 3.6.3.3.
  - venting, 3.6.3.3.
- Cladding
  - attachment, 9.27.5.
  - for braced wall panels, 9.23.13.6.
  - combustible, 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5.
  - in combustible construction, 3.1.4.8.
  - exposing building face, 3.2.3.7.
  - fastening to steel studs, 9.24.1.4.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.27.
  - installation, 5.6.1.2., 5.9.1.1., 9.27.2.4., 9.27.3.6., 9.27.5.
  - interior, 3.1.13.1.
  - noncombustible, 3.1.4.8., 3.2.3.7., 3.2.3.9.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.5.
  - protection against precipitation, 5.6.
  - requirement for, 5.6.1.1., 9.27.2.1.
  - sealing, 5.6.2.1., 9.27.3.6., 9.27.4.
  - on steel studs, 9.24.1.5.
  - support of, 9.20.5., 9.23.10.5., 9.24.3.4.
  - waterproofing, 9.27.4.
  - wind loads, 4.1.7.5., 4.1.7.6., 4.1.7.12.
- Cladding, clay tile, 9.23.4.5.
- Cladding, concrete
  - design, 9.20.6.6.
  - water absorption, 9.20.2.6.
  - weight, 9.20.2.6.
- Cladding, decorative, 3.1.5.24.
- Cladding, hardboard
  - clearances, 9.27.2.4., 9.27.9.5.
  - dimensions, 9.27.9.2.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.27.9.
  - installation, 9.27.2.4., 9.27.3.6., 9.27.5., 9.27.9.3.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1., 9.27.9.1.
- Cladding, lumber
  - dimensions, 9.27.6.2.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.27.6.
  - installation, 5.9.1.1., 9.27.2.4., 9.27.3.6., 9.27.5.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1.
- Cladding, masonry
  - bonding and tying, 9.20.9.
  - flashing, 9.20.13.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.20., 9.27.2.2.
  - installation, 5.6.1.2.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1.



- mortar joints, 9.20.4.
- support of, 9.20.5.
- Cladding, metal
  - housing and small buildings, 9.27.11.
  - installation, 5.9.1.1., 9.27.3.6., 9.27.5.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1., 9.27.11.1.
- Cladding, OSB and waferboard
  - clearances, 9.27.2.4., 9.27.10.4.
  - dimensions, 9.27.10.2.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.27.10.
  - installation, 9.27.2.4., 9.27.3.6., 9.27.5., 9.27.10.3., 9.27.10.4.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1., 9.27.10.1.
- Cladding, plywood
  - dimensions, 9.27.8.2.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.27.8.
  - installation, 9.27.2.4., 9.27.3.6., 9.27.5., 9.27.8.3.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1., 9.27.8.1.
  - sealing, 5.6.2.1., 9.27.8.3., 9.27.8.4.
- Cladding, stone, 9.20.6.6.
- Cladding, vinyl
  - housing and small buildings, 9.27.12.
  - installation, 9.27.5., 9.27.12.2.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1., 9.27.12.1.
- Cladding, waferboard (see Cladding, OSB and waferboard)
- Cladding, wood shingles and shakes
  - grades, 9.27.7.1.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.27.7.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1., 9.27.7.1.
- Classification of buildings/building parts
  - by major occupancy, 3.1.2.1., 9.10.2.
  - for wind load calculations, 4.1.7.2.
- Clearances
  - (see also Headroom clearance)
  - attic or roof spaces, 9.19.1.3.
  - chimneys, 6.3.3.1., 9.21.5., 9.25.3.3.
  - cladding above ground, 9.27.2.4.
  - cladding to roof, 9.27.2.4.
  - combustible framing, 9.22.9.3.
  - combustible material, 6.3.2.6., 9.22.9., 9.33.6.8.
  - cooktops, 9.10.22.1.
  - cooling towers, 6.3.2.15.
  - crawl spaces, 9.18.4.1.
  - door frames, 9.27.9.5., 9.27.10.4.
  - ducts, 6.3.2.6., 9.22.9.4., 9.33.6.8.
  - electric ranges, 9.10.22.1.
  - furnace plenums, 6.3.2.6., 9.33.6.8.
  - furnaces, 6.2.1.5., 9.33.5.2.
  - gas-fired ranges, 9.10.22.1.
  - gas vents, 9.25.3.3.
  - above ground, 9.15.4.6., 9.27.2.4.
  - handrails, 9.8.7.5.
  - hardboard siding, 9.27.9.5., 9.27.10.4.
  - heating and air-conditioning equipment, 6.2.1.5., 9.33.5.2.
  - ovens, 9.10.22.1.
  - pipes, 6.7.1.2., 9.33.8.3.
  - propane ranges, 9.10.22.1.
  - siding above ground, 9.27.2.4.
  - siding to roof, 9.27.2.4.
  - smoke chambers, 9.22.9.3.
  - solid-fuel-burning appliances, 9.33.5.3.
  - solid-fuel fired appliances, 6.2.1.5.
  - stucco from ground, 9.28.1.4.
  - supply ducts, 6.3.2.6., 9.33.6.8.
  - unit heaters, 6.4.2.1.
  - vented products of combustion, 6.3.3.1.
  - window frames, 9.27.9.5., 9.27.10.4.
  - wood-frame construction, 9.23.2.2.
  - wood above ground, 9.3.2.9., 9.23.2.3.
- Climatic data, 1.1.3., 9.36.5.5.
- Closures
  - (see also Doors; Windows)
  - chutes, 3.6.3.3.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - door latches, 3.1.8.15., 3.4.6.16., 9.10.13.9.
  - elevator shaft openings, 3.2.6.5.
  - exterior wall openings, 3.2.3.5.
  - fire dampers, 9.10.13.13.
  - fire-protection rating, 3.1.8.4., 3.1.8.5., 9.10.13.1.
  - in fire separations, 3.2.8.2., 3.3.3.5., 9.10.9.3., 9.10.13., 9.10.13.8.
  - glass blocks, 3.1.8.16., 3.2.3.5., 9.10.13.7.
  - hold-open devices, 3.1.8.14., 9.10.13.11.
  - installation, 3.1.8.5., 9.10.13.1.
  - protection of exit facilities, 3.2.3.13.
  - self-closing devices, 3.1.8.13., 3.4.6.13., 9.9.6.7., 9.10.13.10., 9.10.13.15.
  - temperature limits, 3.1.8.17.
  - twenty-minute, 3.1.8.12.
  - unprotected openings, 3.2.3.1.
  - wired glass, 3.1.8.16., 3.2.3.5.
- Cold weather requirements
  - concrete, 9.3.1.9.
  - excavations, 9.12.1.3.
  - gypsum board, 9.29.5.10.
  - HVAC systems and equipment, 6.2.1.6., 9.33.4.5.

- masonry, 9.20.14.
  - stucco, 9.28.6.1.
- Collar ties, 9.23.14.7.
- Columns
- anchorage, 9.23.6.2., 9.35.4.3.
  - carports, 9.35.3.4., 9.35.4.2., 9.35.4.3.
  - concrete, 9.17.6.
  - fire-resistance rating, 9.10.8.3.
  - garages, 9.35.4.2., 9.35.4.3.
  - heavy timber construction, 3.1.4.7.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.17.
  - lateral support, 9.17.2.2.
  - masonry, 9.17.5.
  - steel, 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5., 9.17.3.
  - supported on masonry or concrete, 9.20.8.4.
  - wood, 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5., 9.17.4.
- Combustible cladding, 3.2.3.7., 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.2.
- Combustible construction
- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - exterior cladding, 3.1.4.8.
  - fire-retardant-treated wood in, 3.1.4.5., 3.1.4.8.
  - foamed plastics in, 3.1.4.2., 9.10.17.10.
  - heavy timber in, 3.1.4.6., 3.1.4.7.
  - materials permitted, 3.1.4.1.
  - projections, 9.10.12.4., 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5.
  - raceways in, 3.1.4.4.
  - supports, 3.1.8.2., 9.10.9.8.
  - wires and cables in, 3.1.4.3.
- Combustible content, 3.2.8.8.
- Combustible dusts
- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - and fire hose nozzles, 3.2.5.11.
- Combustible fibres
- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - storage building classification, 3.1.2.6.
- Combustible gases
- compressed, indoor storage, 3.3.6.3.
  - storage, 3.3.6.2.
- Combustible liquids
- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - storage, 3.3.2.16., 3.3.4.3.
  - storage and dispensing rooms, 3.3.6.4.
- Combustible materials
- clearances to ducts, 3.6.5.6., 6.3.2.6., 9.33.6.8.
  - in combustible construction, 3.1.4.1.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.2., 3.1.5.6., 9.10.6.
  - storage, 3.3.6.2.
- Combustible piping
- drain, waste and vent, 3.1.9.5., 9.10.9.7.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.19.
  - in sprinkler systems, 3.1.9.5., 3.2.5.13., 9.10.9.6.
  - in vacuum cleaning systems, 3.1.9.5.
  - for water distribution, 3.1.9.5., 9.10.9.6.
- Combustible projections
- exposing building face, 3.2.3.6., 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5.
  - at firewalls, 3.1.10.7.
  - limiting distance, 3.2.3.6.
  - soffit protection, 3.2.3.16., 9.10.12.4.
- Combustible refuse storage, 3.6.2.5.
- Combustion venting, 6.3.3.1., 9.32.3.8.
- Commercial cooking equipment, 3.3.1.2., 6.3.1.7., 9.10.1.4., 9.10.13.13.
- Communication, voice (see Voice communication systems)
- Compatibility
- fasteners for cladding, 9.27.5.5.
  - resistance to deterioration, 5.1.4.2.
- Compliance
- definition, 1.2.1.1.[A]
  - energy performance, 2.2.8.3.[C]
- Concealed spaces
- fire blocks in, 3.1.11.1., 3.1.11.3., 3.1.11.4., 3.1.11.5., 3.1.11.7., 9.10.16., 9.10.16.1.
  - above fire separations, 3.1.8.3.
  - fire separations in, 3.6.4.2., 3.6.4.3., 9.10.9.10.
  - insulation, 3.1.11.2.
- Concrete
- admixtures, 9.3.1.8.
  - aggregate for, 9.3.1.1., 9.3.1.4., 9.3.1.7.
  - cantilevered precast steps, 9.8.10.
  - cellular, 9.20.2.4.
  - chimneys, 1.4.1.2.[A], 6.3.3.2., 9.21., 9.33.10.3.
  - cold weather requirements, 9.3.1.9.
  - columns, 9.17.6.
  - dampproofing, 9.13.2.3., 9.13.2.4., 9.13.2.5.
  - design, 4.2.3.5., 4.2.3.6., 9.3.1., 9.4.1.1.
  - flues, 9.21.
  - foundations, 4.2.3.5., 4.2.3.6., 9.15.
  - joints, 9.15.4.9.
  - mixes, 9.3.1.7.
  - plain, reinforced and prestressed, 4.3.3., 9.3.1.
  - roof tiles, 9.26.2.1., 9.26.17.
  - slabs, for floors-on-ground, 9.16.4., 9.25.2.3., 9.33.6.7.
  - stairs, 9.8.9.2., 9.8.10.
  - standards for, 9.3.1.1., 9.3.1.3.

- strength, compressive, 9.3.1.6.
- structural design basis, 4.3.3.1.
- sulphate-resistant, 9.3.1.3.
- surface finish, 9.16.4.1.
- as thermal barrier, 3.1.5.14., 3.1.5.15.
- topping, 9.16.4.2., 9.23.4.4.
- water used in, 9.3.1.5.
- Concrete block, 9.15.2.2., 9.17.5.1., 9.20.2.6.
- Condensation control
  - air barrier systems, 9.25.3.1.
  - in exhaust ducts, 6.3.2.10.
  - and heat transfer, 5.3.1.2.
  - properties, 9.25.5.1.
  - scope of Code, 5.1.1.1.
  - thermal insulation, 9.25.2.1.
  - vapour barrier properties, 5.5.1.2.
  - vapour barriers, 9.25.4.3.
- Conditioned space, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Conflicting requirements, 1.5.1.2.[A]
- Connected buildings, 3.2.6.3.
- Construction
  - relative to occupancy, 9.10.8.
  - review of work, 2.2.7.2.[C]
  - types, 9.10.6.
- Construction camps, 9.10.21.
- Construction sites
  - excavations, 8.2.2.
  - guard persons, 8.2.1.4.
  - repair of damaged public property, 8.2.3.4.
  - safety measures, 8.1.
  - unoccupied, 8.2.1.5.
  - use of streets or public property, 8.2.3.
  - vehicular traffic control, 8.2.4.
  - warning lights, 8.2.3.5.
  - waste material, 8.2.5.
- Constructor, definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Contained use areas
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - doors and door hardware, 3.3.1.13., 3.4.6.11., 3.4.6.16.
  - fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.1.
  - fire annunciators, 3.2.4.8.
  - fire separations, 3.3.3.7.
  - smoke detectors, 3.2.4.11.
  - sprinkler system requirements, 3.2.2.19.
- Contaminated air
  - minimum distances of air intakes from, 6.3.2.9.
  - movement, 3.2.6.2., 3.2.6.3.
  - removal, 6.3.1.6., 6.3.2.14.
- Continental seating, 3.3.2.4.
- Controls
  - accessible 3.8.2.6., 3.8.3.8., 3.8.3.10., 3.8.3.16., 3.8.3.17.
  - location, 3.8.3.8.
  - operation, 3.8.3.8.
  - temperature, 9.33.4.3.
- Convalescent homes
  - fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.3.
  - as residential occupancies, 3.1.2.5., 9.10.2.2.
- Convectors, 9.33.7.1.
- Cooking equipment, commercial, 3.3.1.2., 6.3.1.7., 9.10.1.4., 9.10.13.13.
- Cooktops
  - (see also Stoves)
  - clearances, 9.10.22.1., 9.10.22.2.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - fans, 9.32.3.11.
  - hoods, 9.32.3.11.
  - installation, 9.10.22.1., 9.33.5.3.
  - protection around, 9.10.22.3.
- Coolers, walk-in, 3.1.4.2., 3.1.5.7., 9.10.17.10.
- Cooling systems and equipment
  - installation, 6.6.1.1., 9.33.9.1.
  - structural movement, 4.1.8.18., 6.2.1.4., 9.33.4.7.
  - system pressure, 6.2.1.3., 9.33.4.6.
- Cooling towers and sections, 6.3.2.15.
- Corbelling, 9.15.4.8., 9.20.12.
- Cornices, 3.1.11.5.
- Corridors
  - (see also Public areas; Public corridors)
  - access to exit, 3.3.2.6., 9.9.7.
  - assembly occupancy, 3.3.2.6.
  - care, treatment or detention occupancy, 3.3.3.3., 3.3.3.5.
  - dead-end, 3.1.8.17., 3.3.1.9., 3.3.3.3., 3.3.4.4., 9.9.7.3.
  - dimensions, 3.3.1.9., 9.9.5.2.
  - doors opening into, 3.3.1.11., 9.9.6.1.
  - emergency lighting, 3.2.7.3.
  - fire separations, 9.10.9.15.
  - flame-spread rating, 3.1.13.6., 9.10.21.6.
  - illumination, 3.2.7.1., 3.2.7.3.
  - loads on floor or roof, 4.1.5.3., 4.1.5.4.
  - obstructions, 3.3.1.9., 9.9.5.2., 9.9.5.3., 9.9.6.1.
  - paired doors in, 3.3.3.3.
  - serving patients' sleeping rooms, 3.3.3.5.
  - sliding glass partitions, 9.6.1.4.
  - smoke detectors, 3.2.4.11.
  - temperature rise and area limits exception, 3.1.8.19.

transparent doors in, 3.3.1.19.  
transparent panels in, 3.3.1.19.  
width, 3.3.1.9., 9.9.3.3., 9.9.5.2.  
width, in dwelling units, 9.5.4.1.  
windows in, 3.3.1.19.

**Corrosion protection**  
(see also Corrosion resistance)  
pipes, 9.31.2.2.  
service water heaters, 9.31.6.3.  
steel beams, 9.23.8.2.  
steel lintels, 9.20.5.2.

**Corrosion resistance**  
(see also Corrosion protection)  
ducts, 6.3.2.3., 9.33.6.2., 9.33.6.7.  
elements in environmental separators, 5.1.4.2.  
fasteners for cladding, 9.27.5.5.  
masonry connectors, 9.20.16.1.  
plumbing, 9.31.2.2.  
screens and grilles, 6.3.2.9., 9.32.3.13.  
service water heaters, 9.31.6.3.

**Counters**  
for service to the public, 3.8.3.1., 3.8.3.19.  
for telephones, 3.8.3.20.

**Covered ways**, 8.2.1.1., 8.2.1.2.

**Coverings**  
ducts, 3.6.5.4., 6.3.2.5., 9.33.6.4.  
pipes, 6.3.2.5.

**Crack control joints**, 9.15.4.9.

**Cranes**, loads due to, 4.1.3.2., 4.1.5.11.

**Crawl spaces**  
access, 3.6.4.6., 9.18.2.1., 9.18.4.1.  
air barrier systems in, 9.18.1.3.  
application of Code, 3.6.1.1.  
clearance, 9.18.4.1.  
drainage, 9.18.5.  
fire blocks in, 3.1.11.1., 3.1.11.6.  
fire resistance of floors over, 9.10.8.1., 9.10.9.4.  
fire separations, 3.3.1.4.  
flame-spread rating, 9.18.7.1.  
ground cover, 9.18.6.  
heated, 9.13.4.2., 9.18.1.3., 9.33.3.1.  
housing and small buildings, 9.18.  
insulation, 9.18.1.3., 9.25.2.2., 9.25.2.3.  
regulated as basements, 3.2.2.9., 9.10.8.9.  
return-air inlets, 9.33.6.12.  
supply outlets, 9.33.6.11.  
unheated, 9.18.1.3.  
vapour barrier in, 9.18.1.3.  
ventilation, 6.3.1.2., 9.18.3.

as warm-air plenums, 9.18.7.1.  
Curbs, repair and storage garages, 3.3.5.4., 9.8.8.4.  
Curtain walls (see Fenestration)  
Curved roofs, snow and rain loads, 4.1.6.10.  
Cutting operations room, 3.3.1.25.

## D

**Dampers**  
(see also Fire dampers)  
access, 6.2.1.6., 9.33.4.4.  
adjustable, 9.33.6.9.  
fireplaces, 9.22.6.1.

**Dampproofing**  
crawl spaces, 9.18.6.  
floors, 9.23.2.3.  
floors-on-ground, 9.13.2.1., 9.13.2.6.  
foundations, 9.13.2.  
installation, 9.13.2.4.  
material standards, 5.9.1.1., 9.13.2.2.  
preparation of surface, 9.13.2.3.  
protection from groundwater, 5.7.3.4.  
protection of interior finishes, 9.13.2.5., 9.20.13.9.,  
9.23.2.3.  
requirement for, 9.13.2.1.  
walls, 9.13.2.1., 9.13.2.3., 9.13.2.4., 9.20.13.9.,  
9.23.2.3.

**Dance halls**  
access to exit, 3.3.1.17.  
principal entrances, 3.4.2.6.

**Dangerous goods**  
access openings, 3.2.5.1.  
definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]  
hazardous areas design, 3.3.6.  
process plants, 3.3.6.8., 3.3.6.9.  
storage, 3.3.6.2., 3.3.6.3.

**Dead-end corridors**, 3.1.8.17., 3.3.1.9., 3.3.3.3., 3.3.4.4.,  
9.9.7.3.

**Dead loads**, 1.4.1.2.[A], 4.1.3.2., 4.1.4., 9.4.3.1.

**Decay**, protection against, 9.3.2.9., 9.23.2.2., 9.23.2.3.  
(see also Deterioration)

**Decking for wood shingled roofs**, 9.26.9.1.

**Decks**  
foundations, 9.12.2.2.  
snow loads, 9.4.2.3.  
sprinkler systems, 3.2.5.12.

**Deep foundations**  
damaged, 4.2.7.6.  
definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]

- design, 4.2.7.2.
- installation, 4.2.7.5.
- load testing, 4.2.7.2.
- location and alignment, 4.2.7.3., 4.2.7.4.
- Definitions of words and phrases, 1.4.1.2.[A], 4.1.3.1.
- Deflections
  - air barrier systems, 5.2.2.1., 5.4.1.1.
  - structure, 4.1.3.5., 4.1.8.13., 9.4.3.
- Deformation resistance, 5.2.2.1., 9.12.2.2., 9.15.1.3.
- Demolition sites, safety measures, 8.1.1.3.
- Depressurization, protection against, 9.32.3.8.
- Design
  - environmental separation, 5
  - HVAC systems, 6.2.1.1., 9.33.1.1., 9.33.4.1.
  - structural, 4, 9.4.
- Design calculations and analyses, 2.2.4.5.[C]
- Designer
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - of parts and components, 2.2.4.4.[C]
  - as reviewer of work, 2.2.7.2.[C], 2.2.7.3.[C], 2.2.7.4.[C]
  - signature requirements, 2.2.4.2.[C], 2.2.4.4.[C]
  - structural, requirements for, 2.2.1.2.[C]
  - subsurface inspection, 4.2.2.3., 4.2.2.4., 4.2.4.1.
- Design temperatures
  - indoor, 5.2.1.2., 5.3.1.2., 5.5.1.2., 9.33.3.1.
  - outdoor, 1.1.3.1., 5.2.1.1., 5.3.1.2., 5.5.1.2., 6.2.1.2., 9.33.3.2., 9.33.5.1.
- Detectors
  - carbon monoxide, 6.3.1.4., 6.9.3.1., 9.32.3.8., 9.32.3.9.
  - fire, 1.4.1.2.[A], 3.2.4.4., 3.2.4.10.
  - heat, 1.4.1.2.[A], 9.10.18.3., 9.10.18.4.
  - smoke, 1.4.1.2.[A], 3.1.8.14., 3.2.4.8., 3.2.4.11., 3.2.4.12., 3.2.4.14., 3.2.4.20., 3.2.4.21., 3.6.2.7., 6.9.2.2., 9.10.18., 9.10.18.3., 9.10.18.4., 9.10.18.5., 9.10.21.7.
  - sprinklers installed in lieu of, 9.10.18.4.
- Detention occupancy (see Care, treatment or detention occupancy)
- Deterioration
  - (see also Decay, protection against)
  - due to moisture, 5.5.1.2.
  - resistance to, 5.1.4.2., 9.20.16.1.
  - Diaphragms, earthquake design, 4.1.8.15.
- Differential movement
  - columns, 9.17.2.2.
  - decks and other accessible platforms, 9.12.2.2., 9.23.6.2.
  - elements in environmental separation, 5.1.4.1., 5.2.2.1.
  - metal and vinyl cladding, 9.27.5.6.
- Diffusers, 3.6.5.7., 9.33.6.10., 9.33.6.11.
  - (see also Air outlets)
- Dining areas, loads, 4.1.5.6.
- Direct-vented, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Dispensing rooms, flammable and combustible liquids, 3.3.6.4.
- Distilled beverage alcohol, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Distilleries, 1.4.1.2.[A], 3.2.5.11.
- Distribution panel, emergency lighting, 3.2.7.10.
- Domes, snow and rain loads, 4.1.6.10.
- Door assemblies
  - as fire-protection closures, 3.1.8.5.
  - leakage rates, 3.1.8.4.
- Door frames
  - caulking, 9.20.13.11.
  - sealant, 9.27.4.1.
  - steel, 9.10.13.6.
  - thermal breaks, 9.7.3.3.
  - wood, 9.10.13.3.
- Doors
  - (see also Closures; Doorways)
  - action of, 9.9.6.4.
  - airtightness, 9.36.2.9., 9.36.2.10.
  - area, calculating, 9.36.2.3.
  - accessible path of travel, 3.8.3.6.
  - in bedrooms, 9.9.10.1.
  - containing foamed plastics, 3.1.4.2.
  - in corridors, 3.3.1.13., 3.3.3.3., 9.9.6.1., 9.10.13.
  - dimensions, 3.3.3.4., 9.5.5., 9.9.6.3.
  - direction of swing, 3.3.1.11., 3.3.3.3., 3.4.6.10., 3.4.6.12., 3.6.2.6., 9.9.6.5., 9.10.13.12.
  - between dwelling unit and garage, 9.10.13.15.
  - in dwelling units, 3.1.13.2.
  - emergency crossover access to floor areas, 3.4.6.18.
  - for exits, 3.1.8.14., 3.4.5.1., 3.4.6.11., 3.4.6.12., 3.4.6.16., 9.9.6.
  - exterior, 5.3.1.2., 5.4.1.2., 9.7.4.3., 9.7.5.2.
  - in fire separations, 3.1.8.12. - 3.1.8.15., 3.1.8.17., 3.3.3.5., 9.10.13.
  - flame-spread rating, 3.1.13.2., 3.1.13.7., 9.10.17.1.
  - force required to open, 9.9.6.8.
  - glass or transparent, 3.3.1.19., 3.4.1.8., 9.6., 9.6.1.3., 9.9.4.3.
  - hardware (see Hardware for doors)
  - housing and small buildings, 9.7.
  - incinerator rooms, 3.6.2.6.

- installation, 9.7.6.
  - at landings, 9.8.6.2.
  - manufactured and pre-assembled, 9.7.4.
  - in means of egress, 3.3.1.13., 3.4.6.10., 3.4.6.11., 9.9.6., 9.9.7., 9.10.13.
  - in means of egress from dwelling units, 9.9.9.
  - in means of egress from suites, 9.9.6., 9.9.7.4., 9.9.7.6., 9.9.8.
  - near steps or stairs, 3.4.6.11., 9.8.6.2., 9.9.6.6.
  - opening onto landings, 9.8.6.3.
  - performance expectations, 9.7.3.
  - power operators, 3.8.2.7., 3.8.3.6.
  - protection, 9.8.8.1.
  - resistance to forced entry, 9.7.5.2.
  - revolving, 3.4.6.15., 9.9.6.4.
  - service rooms, 3.6.2.6., 9.10.13.12.
  - site-built, 9.7.5.
  - sliding (see Sliding doors)
  - in smoke-tight barriers, 9.10.9.3.
  - of solid core wood, 9.10.13.
  - standards for, 5.3.1.2., 5.4.1.2., 9.7.4., 9.10.13.2.
  - storage garages, 9.9.6.4.
  - storage suites, 9.9.6.4.
  - storm, 5.9.2.4., 9.6.1.4., 9.7.3.1., 9.7.3.3.
  - temperature limits, 3.1.8.17.
  - thermal breaks, 5.9.2.4., 9.7.3.3.
  - thermal characteristics, 9.36.2.7.
  - thresholds, 3.3.1.13., 3.4.6.1., 3.8.3.6., 3.8.3.16.
  - water-closet stalls, 3.8.3.11.
- Door stops, 9.10.13.16.
- Doorways
- (see also Doors)
  - barrier-free path of travel, 3.8.3.6.
  - bathrooms, 9.5.5.3.
  - dimensions, 3.3.3.4., 3.4.3.2., 9.5.5., 9.7.2.2., 9.9.6.2., 9.9.6.3.
  - between dwelling unit and garage, 9.10.13.15.
  - dwelling units, 9.5.5.1.
  - headroom clearance, 3.4.3.4.
  - at landings, 9.8.6.2., 9.8.6.3.
  - means of egress, 3.3.1.5.
  - means of egress from dwelling units, 9.9.9.
  - means of egress from suites, 3.3.1.3., 3.3.1.5., 9.9.7.2., 9.9.7.4., 9.9.7.6., 9.9.8.
  - near stairs, 9.8.6.2.
  - obstructions, 9.9.6.1., 9.9.6.3.
  - at ramp landings, 9.8.6.3.
  - secondary suites, 9.5.5.1.
  - service rooms, 9.9.5.9.
  - water closet rooms, 9.5.5.2.
  - width, 3.3.3.4., 3.4.3.2.
- Downspouts, 5.6.2.2., 9.14.6.5., 9.26.18.1.
- Draft stops, 3.2.8.6.
- Drainage
- above-ground masonry walls, 9.20.13.9.
  - building envelopes, 5.6.2.2.
  - crawl spaces, 9.18.5.
  - disposal, 5.6.2.2., 9.14.5.
  - evacuation site, 9.14.4.3.
  - floors, 9.16.3.3.
  - floors-on-ground, 9.16.3.
  - footings, 9.14.
  - foundations, 9.14.2., 9.35.3.3.
  - granular layer installation, 9.14.4.2., 9.14.4.4.
  - granular layers, 9.14.2.1., 9.14.4.
  - granular material, 9.14.4.1.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.14.
  - pipes, 9.14.3.
  - pipes and tiles installation, 9.14.3.3.
  - roofs, 5.6.2.2., 9.26.18.
  - second plane of protection, 9.27.3.
  - surface water, 5.7., 9.12.3.2., 9.14., 9.14.6.
  - tiles, 9.14.3.
  - underground ducts, 6.3.2.12., 9.33.6.7.
- Drainage systems, sanitary, 1.4.1.2.[A], 9.31., 9.31.2.1., 9.31.5.
- (see also Plumbing)
- Drain pans, 6.3.2.2.
- Drains
- floors, 9.31.4.3.
  - from noncombustible water closets, 9.10.9.7.
  - roofs, 5.6.2.2., 9.26.18.2.
- Drain, waste and vent piping, 3.1.9.5., 9.10.9.7.
- (see also Plumbing)
- Draperies, in exits, 9.9.5.6.
- Drift limits, earthquake design, 4.1.8.13.
- Drilling of framing members, 9.23.5.1.
- Drinking fountains, 3.8.2.8., 3.8.3.10.
- Dry standpipes, 3.2.5.9.
- Dry wells, 9.14.5.3.
- Ducts
- access, 3.6.4.5., 6.2.1.6., 9.33.4.4.
  - access openings, 6.3.2.4.
  - adhesives, 3.6.5.4., 9.33.6.4.
  - air filters in, 6.8.1.3.
  - aluminum, 9.33.6.5.
  - in ceiling spaces, 3.1.9.6., 9.10.5.1.
  - cleaning, 6.2.1.6., 9.33.4.4.

- clearances, 3.6.5.6., 6.3.2.6., 9.22.9.4., 9.33.6.8.
  - combustible, 3.6.5.1., 9.33.6.2.
  - in or beneath concrete slabs, 9.33.6.7.
  - connections, 6.3.2.4., 9.33.6.6., 9.33.6.7.
  - connectors, 3.6.5.1., 6.3.2.3., 6.3.2.18., 9.33.6.2.
  - construction, 9.33.6.6.
  - for cooking equipment, 3.1.8.8., 3.1.8.9., 3.6.3.5.
  - coverings, 3.6.5.4., 6.3.2.5., 9.10.17.12., 9.33.6.4.
  - design, 6.2.3., 9.33.6.1., 9.33.6.5.
  - dimensions, 9.32.3.11.
  - drainage, 6.3.2.12., 9.33.6.7.
  - drain pans, 6.3.2.2.
  - exhaust (see Exhaust ducts)
  - in exits, 6.9.2.4.
  - in fire-rated assemblies, 3.1.9.6., 9.10.5.1., 9.10.9.6.
  - fire stops, 9.33.6.6.
  - fittings, 6.3.2.3., 9.32.3.11., 9.33.6.2., 9.33.6.5.
  - galvanized, 9.33.6.5.
  - installation, 6.2.3., 9.33.6.1., 9.33.6.7.
  - insulation, 3.6.5.4., 6.3.2.5., 9.32.3.11., 9.33.6.4.
  - interconnection, 6.3.2.7., 9.33.6.7.
  - joints, 6.3.2.4., 9.32.3.11., 9.33.6.3., 9.33.6.6., 9.33.6.7.
  - leakage, 6.3.2.7.
  - linings, 3.6.5.4., 6.3.2.5., 9.10.17.12., 9.33.6.4.
  - materials, 6.3.2.3., 9.32.3.11., 9.33.6.2.
  - metal, 9.33.6.5.
  - noncombustible, 3.1.8.8., 3.1.8.9., 3.6.5.1.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.18.
  - penetrating fire blocks, 9.10.16.4.
  - penetrating fire separations, 3.1.8.7., 3.1.8.8., 3.1.8.9., 3.1.9.2., 9.10.9.6., 9.10.13.13.
  - penetrating fire stops, 3.1.11.7.
  - return air systems, 1.4.1.2.[A], 3.6.5.8., 6.3.2.11., 9.33.6.7., 9.33.6.13.
  - sealing, 3.6.5.3., 6.3.2.19., 9.32.3.11., 9.33.6.3., 9.33.6.7.
  - smoke detectors in, 6.9.2.2.
  - supply, 9.32.3.11., 9.33.6.7.
  - systems, 6.2.3., 9.33.6.
  - trunk, 9.33.6.7.
  - underground, 6.3.2.12., 9.33.6.7.
  - ventilation, 6.2.3., 9.32.3.11., 9.33.6.2.
  - Duct-type smoke detectors, 3.2.4.12.
  - Dumbwaiters, 3.5.1.1., 3.5.2.1., 3.5.3.2.
  - Dusts, hazardous, 6.9.1.2.
  - Dwelling units
    - (see also Housing and small buildings)
    - alarm audibility, 3.2.4.18.
    - combustible projections, 3.2.3.6., 9.10.14.5.
    - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
    - doors in means of egress, 9.9.6.
    - door swing, 3.4.6.12., 9.9.6.5.
    - doorways, 9.5.5., 9.9.6.2., 9.9.6.3.
    - egress, 3.3.4.4., 9.9.9.
    - electrical outlets, 9.34.2.2.
    - exception for combustible projections, 9.10.15.5.
    - fire alarms, 9.10.18.2.
    - fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.1.
    - fire detectors, 3.2.4.10.
    - fire protection, 3.2.2.47. - 3.2.2.54., 9.10.
    - fire-protection closures, 3.1.8.5.
    - fire-resistance rating, 9.10.8.10.
    - fire separations, 3.3.4.2., 9.9.4., 9.10.9.4., 9.10.9.11., 9.10.9.12., 9.10.9.14.
    - firewalls, 9.10.11.2.
    - floors-on-ground, 9.16.1.3.
    - guards, 3.3.4.7., 9.8., 9.8.8.
    - hallways, 9.5.4.1.
    - handrails, 3.3.4.7., 9.8., 9.8.7.
    - height of rooms and spaces, 3.7.1.1., 9.5.3.
    - landings, 9.8.6., 9.8.6.3.
    - manual fire alarm stations, 3.2.4.16.
    - ramps, 9.8., 9.8.5.2.
    - secondary suites, 9.1.2.1.
    - in self-service storage buildings, 3.9.3.1.
    - shared egress facilities, 9.9.9.3.
    - smoke alarms, 3.2.4.20., 9.10.19.
    - sound control, 3.3.4.6., 5.8.1.1., 9.11.
    - spatial separation between houses, 9.10.15.
    - sprinkler systems, 3.2.5.12.
    - stairs, 3.3.4.7., 9.8.
    - travel limit to exits, 9.9.9.1.
    - uniformity of runs in flights with mixed treads, 9.8.4.5.
    - water closets, 9.31.4.1.
  - Dynamic procedure
    - earthquake load and effects calculations, 4.1.8.12.
    - wind load calculations, 4.1.7.8.
- ## E
- Earthquake design
    - accidental torsional effects, 4.1.8.12.
    - analysis, 4.1.8.1., 4.1.8.7.
    - anchorage of building frames, 9.23.6.1.
    - bracing to resist lateral loads, 9.23.13.
    - building strength and stability, 4.1.3.2.
    - deflections, 4.1.8.13.

- direction of loading, 4.1.8.8.
- dynamic analysis, 4.1.8.12.
- equivalent static force analysis, 4.1.8.11.
- fasteners for sheathing or subflooring, 9.23.3.5.
- foundations, 4.1.8.16., 4.1.8.17.
- joints in top plates of loadbearing walls, 9.23.11.4.
- masonry walls, 9.20.1.2., 9.20.15.
- notation, 4.1.8.2.
- requirements, 4.1.8.3.
- roof sheathing, 9.23.16.1.
- seismic force reduction factors and system overstrength factors, 4.1.8.9.
- seismic isolation, 4.1.8.19., 4.1.8.20.
- site properties, 4.1.8.4.
- special provisions, 4.1.8.10., 4.1.8.15.
- structural irregularities, 4.1.8.6.
- structural separation, 4.1.8.14.
- supplemental energy dissipation, 4.1.8.21., 4.1.8.22.
- Eave projections, 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5., 9.26.5.
- Eave protection, 9.26.2.1., 9.26.5.1., 9.26.5.2.
- Effective thermal resistance (RSI value), definition, 9.36.1.2.
- Egress (see Doors; Doorways; Means of egress)
- Egress doorways, 3.3.1.5., 3.3.1.6.
- Electrical conductors
  - protection of, 3.2.7.10.
  - tests, 3.2.7.10.
- Electrical equipment, 3.6.1.2., 9.33.5.2., 9.34.
- Electrical equipment vaults, 3.6.2.7.
- Electrical supervision, fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.9.
- Electrical wiring
  - exit signs, 3.4.5.2.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.34.
  - service facilities, 3.6.1.2.
- Electric cables, storage, 3.3.6.2.
- Electromagnetic locking device, 3.3.1.13., 3.4.6.16., 3.4.6.18., 9.9.6.7.
- Elevating devices, 3.8.2.3., 3.8.3.7.
- Elevator cables, 3.1.5.22.
- Elevator cars, flame-spread rating, 3.1.13.11.
- Elevators
  - application of Code, 3.5.1.1.
  - accessible path of travel, 3.3.1.7., 3.8.2.3., 3.8.3.2., 3.8.3.7.
  - dimensions, 3.5.4.1.
  - earthquake design, 4.1.8.18.
  - emergency operation, 3.2.6.4., 3.2.7.9.
  - emergency recall, 3.2.4.14., 3.2.6.4.
  - for firefighters, 3.2.6.5., 3.2.7.9.
  - fire protection, 9.10.1.3.
  - flame-spread rating, 3.1.13.7.
  - high buildings, 3.2.7.9.
  - hoistway noise, 5.8.1.1.
  - hoistways, 3.2.6.4., 3.2.6.6., 3.2.8.4., 3.5.3.1., 3.5.3.3., 3.5.4.2., 9.10.18.4.
  - machine rooms, 3.2.1.1., 3.2.2.14., 3.2.5.12., 3.5.3.3.
  - not a means of egress, 9.9.2.3.
  - smoke detectors, 3.2.4.11., 3.2.4.14.
  - standards, 3.5.2.1., 3.8.3.7.
- Emergency cables and conductors, 3.2.7.10.
- Emergency elevators, 3.2.6.4., 3.2.6.5., 3.2.7.9.
- Emergency lighting, 3.2.7.3., 3.2.7.4., 3.2.7.10., 9.9.12., 9.9.12.3.
- Emergency power supply
  - exit signs, 9.9.11.3.
  - installation, 3.2.7.5., 3.6.2.8.
  - lighting, 3.2.7.4., 9.9.12.3.
  - smoke alarms, 9.10.19.4.
- Emergency return, elevators, 3.2.4.14., 3.2.6.4.
- Energy efficiency
  - building envelope, 9.36.2.
  - definition, 9.36.1.2.
  - energy performance compliance, 9.36.5.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.36.
  - HVAC systems and equipment, 9.36.3.
  - service water heating systems, 9.36.4.
- Energy performance
  - compliance, 9.36.5.
  - definitions, 9.36.5.2.
  - drawings and specifications, 2.2.8.[C]
- [Energy step code. 9.36.6., 10.2.3.](#)
- Entrances, accessible, 3.8.2.2.
- Environmental loads, 5.1.4.1., 5.2.1., 5.2.1.3., 5.9.3.2.
- Environmental separation
  - air leakage, 9.25., 9.25.3.
  - application of Code, 5
  - compliance with standards, 5.9.1.1.
  - condensation control, 9.25.
  - crawl spaces, 9.18.
  - dampproofing, 9.13., 9.13.2.
  - drawings and specifications, 2.2.5.2.[C]
  - fire (see Fire separations)
  - heat transfer, 9.25., 9.25.2.
  - roof spaces, 9.19.
  - soil gas control, 9.13., 9.13.4.
  - sound control, 5.8.1., 9.11.
  - waterproofing, 9.13., 9.13.3.
- Equipment



- air-conditioning, 9.33.5.
- characteristics, 1.2.2.1.[A]
- cooking, 3.3.1.2., 6.3.1.7., 9.10.1.4., 9.10.13.13.
- electrical installations, 9.33.5.2., 9.34.1.1.
- HVAC, 6.1.1.2., 9.33.1.1., 9.33.5.
- loads on floors and roofs, 4.1.5.3.
- odour removal, 9.33.6.14.
- space cooling, 9.33.5.2., 9.33.9.
- space heating, 9.33.5.2.
- storage, 1.2.2.2.[A]
- used, 1.2.2.3.[A]
- Escalators, 3.2.8.2., 3.5.1.1., 3.5.2.1., 3.8.2.4., 9.10.1.3.
  - earthquake design, 4.1.8.18.
- Evaporative air coolers, 6.3.2.16.
- Evaporative condensers, 6.3.2.15.
- Evaporative cooling towers, 6.3.2.15.
- Evaporative fluid coolers, 6.3.2.15.
- Excavations
  - backfill, 9.12.3.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - depth, 9.12.2.
  - design of, 4.2.5.1.
  - erosion, 4.2.5.6.
  - grading, 9.14.4.3.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.12.
  - native soil, 9.12.1.1.
  - organic material, 9.12.1.1.
  - protection from freezing, 4.2.5.7., 9.12.1.3.
  - safety measures, 8.2.2.
  - structural design, 4.2.5.
  - support of, 4.2.5.3.
  - water control, 4.2.5.5.
  - water in, 8.2.2.1., 9.12.1.2.
- Exhaust
  - capacity, 9.32.3.3., 9.32.3.4., 9.32.3.7.
  - discharge, 6.3.2.10.
  - fans, 9.32.3.7.
  - to garages, 6.3.2.10.
  - intakes, 9.32.3.3., 9.32.3.5., 9.32.3.7.
  - outlets, 3.6.5.7., 6.3.2.10.
  - systems, 3.2.6.6., 3.2.8.7., 3.3.1.20., 9.10.9.18.
- Exhaust air openings, 6.3.2.9.
- Exhaust ducts
  - combining, 6.3.2.10.
  - condensation, 6.3.2.10.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - fire dampers in, 9.10.13.13.
  - fire dampers waived, 3.1.8.8.
  - insulation, 6.3.2.5., 9.32.3.11., 9.33.6.4.
  - interconnection, 6.3.2.7., 6.3.2.10.
  - laboratory enclosures, 6.3.4.3.
  - serving cooking equipment, 6.3.2.10.
  - serving laundry equipment, 6.3.2.10., 9.32.1.3.
  - serving more than one fire compartment, 9.10.9.18.
  - smoke dampers waived, 3.1.8.9.
  - vertical service spaces, 3.6.3.4.
- Exhibitions, 3.1.2.3.
- Existing buildings, application of Code, 1.1.1.1.[A]
- Exits
  - (see also Means of egress)
  - access to, 3.4.6.17., 9.9.7., 9.9.7.1.
  - aggregate width, 3.4.3.1., 3.4.3.2., 9.9.3.
  - appliances in, 9.9.5.7.
  - balconies, 3.4.4.1.
  - capacity, 3.4.3.2.
  - combustible glazing restrictions, 3.4.1.10.
  - convergence, 3.4.1.2.
  - cumulative width, 3.4.3.2.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - distance between, 3.4.2.3.
  - door hardware, 3.4.6.16., 3.4.6.17.
  - doors, 3.2.3.13., 3.4.3.3., 3.4.6.11., 3.4.6.13., 3.4.6.16., 9.7.2.2.
  - door swing, 3.4.6.12.
  - ducts in, 6.9.2.4.
  - dwelling units, 3.3.4.4., 9.9.9.
  - emergency access, 3.4.6.18.
  - emergency lighting, 3.2.7.3., 9.9.12.
  - exterior passageways, 3.1.13.10., 3.4.1.5.
  - finish, interior, 9.10.17.
  - fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.1.
  - fire hose connections, 3.2.5.10.
  - fire separations, 3.4.4.1., 9.9.4.
  - from floor areas, 9.9.8.
  - general requirements, 9.9.2.
  - glass block in, 3.2.3.13., 9.9.4.3. - 9.9.4.7.
  - glass doors, 9.6., 9.9.4.3.
  - glass and transparent panels and doors, 3.4.1.8.
  - guards, 3.4.6.6.
  - headroom clearance, 3.4.3.4., 9.8.2.2., 9.9.3.4., 9.9.6.2.
  - horizontal, 3.4.1.4., 3.4.1.6., 9.9.2.1.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.9.
  - integrity, 3.4.4.4., 9.9.4.2.
  - interconnected floor space, 3.2.8.4., 3.4.3.2.
  - landings, 9.8.1.3.
  - level, lowest, and smoke contamination, 3.2.6.2.
  - levels, 1.4.1.2.[A], 3.2.6.2.

- lighting, 3.2.7.1., 9.9.12.
  - loads on floor or roof, 4.1.5.3.
  - through lobbies, 3.4.4.2., 9.9.8.5.
  - location, 3.4.2.5., 9.9.8.4.
  - manual fire alarm stations, 3.2.4.16.
  - from mezzanine, 3.4.2.2., 9.9.8.6.
  - minimum number, 3.4.2.1.
  - mirror restrictions, 3.4.1.9., 9.9.5.6.
  - number, 9.9.7.1., 9.9.7.2., 9.9.8.2., 9.9.9.
  - obstructions, 3.4.6.11., 9.9.5., 9.9.5.5., 9.9.6.1., 9.9.6.2., 9.9.11.2.
  - obstructions permitted, 3.4.3.3.
  - protected floor space, 3.2.8.5., 3.4.3.2.
  - purpose, 9.9.2.2.
  - ramps, 3.4.5.2.
  - revolving doors, 3.4.6.15., 9.9.6.4.
  - rooms opening into, 3.4.4.4., 9.9.5.9., 9.9.8.5.
  - secondary suites, 9.9.9.
  - separation, 3.4.1.2.
  - service rooms under, 3.6.2.2., 9.9.5.8.
  - signs, 3.4.5.1., 3.4.5.2., 9.9.11., 9.9.11.3.
  - smoke detectors, 3.2.4.11.
  - stairs, 3.4.5.2., 3.4.6.8., 3.4.6.9., 9.8.1.3., 9.8.2.1., 9.8.3.1.
  - storage garages, 9.9.6.4.
  - storeys, 1.4.1.2.[A], 3.2.6.2.
  - travel distance, 3.4.2.1., 3.4.2.3., 3.4.2.4., 9.9.8.2.
  - types, 3.4.1.4., 9.9.2.1.
  - visibility, 9.9.11.2.
  - wall openings near, 9.9.4.4.
  - weather protection, 3.4.6.11.
  - width, 3.4.3.3., 9.9.3.2., 9.9.3.3., 9.9.8.3.
  - windows, 3.2.3.13., 9.7.2.2., 9.9.4.
  - wired glass in, 3.2.3.13., 9.9.4.3. - 9.9.4.6.
- Expansion and contraction
- elements in environmental separation, 5.1.4.1., 5.2.2.1.
  - heating and cooling systems, 6.2.1.3., 9.33.4.6., 9.33.8.1.
  - metal and vinyl siding, 9.27.5.6.
  - pipng, 6.7.1.1., 9.33.8.1.
  - structural, 4.1.2.1.
- Explosion venting, 3.3.1.20.
- Exposing building face
- area, 3.2.3.2.
  - area and aspect ratio, 9.10.14.5.
  - area and location, 9.10.14.2., 9.10.15.2.
  - construction, 3.2.3.7., 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - exits, 3.2.3.13.
  - fire resistance waived, 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5.
  - first storey facing a street, 9.10.14.4.
  - garage serving a dwelling unit, 9.10.14.5.
  - glazed openings, 9.10.15.2.
  - limiting distance, 3.2.3.5., 3.2.3.6., 3.2.3.7., 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5.
  - low-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 3), 3.2.3.11.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.5.
  - protection of, 3.2.3.8.
  - restrictions on combustible projections, 3.2.3.6., 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5.
  - spatial separation between buildings, 9.10.14., 9.10.15.
  - structural members, 3.2.3.9.
  - unlimited openings, 3.2.3.10., 9.10.14.4., 9.10.15.4.
  - unprotected openings, 3.2.3.1., 3.2.3.2., 3.2.3.12., 9.10.14.4., 9.10.15.4.
- Exterior areas, loads on, 4.1.5.5.
- Exterior insulation finish systems, 5.9.4., 9.27.12.
- Exterior ornamentations
- earthquake loads, 4.1.8.1.
  - wind loads, 4.1.7.11.
- ## F
- Fabrics, for canopies and marquees, 3.1.16.1.
- Factories
- loads on floor or roof, 4.1.5.3.
  - storage areas, 4.1.5.3.
- Factory-built chimneys, 1.4.1.2.[A], 9.33.10.2.
- Factory-constructed buildings, 1.1.1.1.[A]
- Falsework, 4.1.1.3.
- Fans
- access, 6.2.1.6., 9.33.4.4.
  - auxiliary, 9.32.3.4.
  - bathrooms, 9.32.3.3.
  - capacity, 9.32.3.3., 9.32.3.10.
  - controls, 9.32.3.3.
  - cooktops, 9.32.3.7., 9.32.3.11.
  - dehumidistat, 9.32.3.3., 9.32.3.7.
  - emergency power supply, 3.2.7.9.
  - emergency stoppage, 3.2.6.2.
  - exhaust, 9.32.3.3., 9.32.3.5.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.32.3.
  - installation, 6.3.2.17., 9.32.3.3. - 9.32.3.6., 9.32.3.10.
  - kitchens, 9.32.3.3., 9.32.3.7.
  - location, 6.3.2.17., 9.32.3.2.

- noise, 9.32.3.2.
- sound ratings, 9.32.3.10.
- standards for, 9.32.3.10.
- supplementary exhaust, 9.32.3.7.
- supply, 9.32.3.4., 9.32.3.5.
- vibration, 9.32.3.2.
- Farm buildings
  - application of Code, 1.1.1.1.[A]
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Fasteners
  - cladding, 9.27.5.4.
  - dimensions, 9.27.5.4.
  - gypsum board, 9.29.5.5.
  - roofing, 9.26.2.3., 9.26.2.4.
  - siding, 9.27.5.4.
  - standard for, 9.23.3.1.
  - stucco, 9.28.3.1., 9.28.3.2.
- Fastening
  - cladding, 9.27.5.4.
  - furring, 9.29.3.2.
  - gypsum board, 9.29.5.8., 9.29.5.9.
  - hardboard finish, 9.29.7.3.
  - plywood finish, 9.29.6.3.
  - sheathing, 9.23.3.5.
  - shingles, 9.26.7.4., 9.26.8.4., 9.26.8.5.
  - siding, 9.27.5.4.
  - steel framing, 9.24.3.6.
  - steel studs, 9.24.1.4.
  - stucco lath, 9.28.4.6.
  - subflooring, 9.23.3.5.
  - underlay, 9.30.2.3.
  - wood-frame construction, 9.23.3.
  - wood shingles and shakes, 9.26.9.5., 9.26.10.3.
- Faucets and other bathroom accessories, 3.7.2.3., 3.7.2.9., 3.8.3.8., 3.8.3.11., 3.8.3.15., 3.8.3.17.
- Fences, at construction and demolition sites, 8.2.1.3.
- Fenestration
  - (see also Windows)
  - airtightness, 5.9.3.4., 9.36.2.9.
  - area, calculating, 9.36.2.3.
  - definition, 9.36.1.2.
  - heat transfer, 5.9.3.3.
  - resistance to water penetration, 5.9.3.5.
  - structural and environmental loads, 5.9.3.2.
  - thermal characteristics, 9.36.2.2., 9.36.2.7.
  - thermal resistance calculation, 9.36.2.11.
  - types, 5.9.3.1.
  - water penetration, 5.9.3.5.
- Fibreboard
  - fastening, 9.29.8.3.
  - installation, 9.29.8.3., 9.29.8.4.
  - as insulating finish, 9.29.8.
  - material standard, 9.29.8.1.
  - nailing, 9.29.8.3.
  - as roof sheathing, 9.23.16.7.
  - thickness, 9.29.8.2.
  - as wall sheathing, 9.23.17.2., 9.23.17.3.
- Fill
  - (see also Backfill; Backfilling)
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - beneath floors-on-ground, 9.16.2.1., 9.16.2.2.
  - beneath footings, 9.15.3.2.
  - beneath foundations, 4.2.4.13.
- Filters, air, 6.8.1.3., 9.33.6.14.
- Finishes
  - interior (see Interior finishes)
  - slip-resistant, 3.4.6.1.
- Fire alarm and detection systems
  - annunciators, 3.2.4.8.
  - audibility, 3.2.4.18., 3.2.4.21.
  - audible alert and alarm signals, 3.2.4.17.
  - central alarm and control facility, 3.2.6.7.
  - central vacuum shutdown, 3.2.4.13.
  - continuity, 3.2.4.2.
  - design, 9.10.18.3.
  - and door hold-open devices, 3.1.8.14.
  - electrical supervision, 3.2.4.9.
  - emergency power supply, 3.2.7.8.
  - fire detectors, 3.2.4.4., 3.2.4.10.
  - fire separations for, 3.6.2.8.
  - installation, 3.2.4.1., 3.2.4.5., 9.10.18.3.
  - manual stations, 3.2.4.16.
  - requirements, 9.10.18.
  - residential firewarning systems, 3.2.4.21., 9.10.19.8.
  - signal devices, 3.2.4.18.
  - signals to fire department, 3.2.4.7.
  - silencing, 3.2.4.6.
  - single stage systems, 3.2.4.3., 3.2.4.4., 3.2.4.7.
  - smoke alarms, 3.2.4.20.
  - smoke detectors, 3.2.4.11., 3.2.4.12., 9.10.18., 9.10.18.5.
  - sprinkler systems, 3.2.4.8.
  - testing, 3.2.4.5.
  - two-stage systems, 3.2.4.3., 3.2.4.4., 3.2.4.7.
  - types, 3.2.4.3.
  - vacuum cleaning systems, 9.10.18.7.
  - visible signal devices, 3.2.4.19.
  - voice communication systems, 3.2.4.22.

- waterflow trigger, 3.2.5.14.
- Fire blocks
  - (see also Fire stops)
  - in concealed spaces, 3.1.11., 9.10.16.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - in eave overhangs, 3.2.3.16.
  - in floor assemblies, 3.1.11.5.
  - in mansard and gambrel roofs, 3.1.11.5., 9.10.16.1.
  - materials, 3.1.11.7., 9.10.16.3.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.2., 3.1.11.3.
  - pipes and ducts in, 9.10.16.4.
  - in roof assemblies, 3.1.11.5., 3.1.11.7.
  - in walls/wall assemblies, 3.1.11.2., 9.10.16.2.
- Fire chambers, 9.22.4.
- Fire compartments
  - annunciators, 3.2.4.8.
  - basements, 3.2.1.5.
  - combustible sprinkler piping, 3.2.5.13.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - exits, 3.2.3.13.
  - exposing building face area, 3.2.3.2.
  - unprotected openings, 3.2.3.1.
  - wall exposed to another wall, 3.2.3.14.
- Fire curtains, 3.3.2.14.
- Fire dampers
  - (see also Dampers)
  - access, 3.1.8.10.
  - as closures, 3.1.8.5.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - in ducts, 9.10.13.13.
  - in fire separations, 3.1.8.7.
  - in HVAC systems, 6.9.2.1.
  - installation, 3.1.8.10.
  - leakage rates, 3.1.8.4.
  - in non-loadbearing walls, 9.24.3.7.
  - penetrating fire separations, 9.10.9.6.
  - waived, 3.1.8.8.
- Fire department
  - access routes, 3.2.5.4., 3.2.5.6.
  - limiting distance, 9.10.15.3.
  - signals to, 3.2.4.7., 3.2.4.9., 3.2.6.7.
- Fire department connections on buildings, 3.2.5.5., 3.2.5.9., 3.2.5.15.
- Fire detectors, 1.4.1.2.[A], 3.2.4.4., 3.2.4.10.
- Fire escapes
  - access, 3.4.7.3.
  - balconies, 3.4.7.3.
  - closures, 3.4.7.4.
  - construction, 3.4.7.2.
  - dwelling units, 3.4.7.3.
  - existing buildings, 3.4.7.1.
  - guards, 3.4.7.6.
  - handrails, 3.4.7.6.
  - headroom, 3.4.7.5.
  - landings, 3.4.7.7.
  - loads on, 4.1.5.3.
  - as means of egress, 3.4.1.4., 9.9.2.3.
  - protection of, 3.4.7.4.
  - scope of Code, 3.4.7.1.
  - stairs, 3.4.6.8., 3.4.7.5.
- Fire extinguishers, 3.2.5.16., 9.10.20.4., 9.10.21.8.
- Fire extinguishing systems, industrial occupancies, 3.3.5.2.
- Firefighters, 3.2.6.2., 3.2.6.5., 3.2.8.7.
- Firefighting (see Access for firefighting)
- Firefighting services (see Fire department)
- Fire hose cabinets, 3.2.5.11.
- Fire hose nozzles, 3.2.5.11.
- Fire hose stations, 3.2.5.11., 9.10.21.9.
- Fire load, 1.4.1.2.[A], 3.2.2.89., 3.2.3.11.
- Fireplaces
  - airtightness, 9.36.2.9.
  - chimneys, 9.21.2.5., 9.21.2.6.
  - clearances, 9.22.9.
  - combustion air, 9.22.1.4.
  - concrete materials, 9.22.1.2.
  - continuity of insulation, 9.36.2.5.
  - dampers, 9.22.6.1.
  - design and installation, 6.9.4.2.
  - factory-built, 9.22.8.
  - fire chamber, 9.22.4.
  - footings, 9.22.1.3.
  - hearth, 9.22.5.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.22., 9.33.5.4.
  - inserts, 9.22.10.
  - liners (see Liners, fireplace)
  - masonry materials, 9.22.1.2.
  - protection against depressurization, 9.32.3.8.
  - smoke chambers, 9.22.7.
  - walls, 9.22.3.
- Fire protection
  - air-supported structures, 3.1.6.
  - building classification, 3.1.2.
  - combustible construction, 3.1.4.
  - commissioning of life safety and fire protection systems, 9.10.1.2.
  - components, 2.2.3.[C], 3.1.1.4.
  - construction camps, 9.10.21.

- cooktops, 9.10.22.
- crawl spaces, 9.18.7.
- dwelling units, 9.10.
- electric ranges, 9.10.22.
- electrical conductors, 3.2.7.10.
- exceptions, 3.2.2.3.
- exits, 9.9.4.
- fire-resistance ratings, 3.1.7.
- fire safety plan, 1.1.4.
- gas ranges, 9.10.22.
- limiting distance and spatial separation between buildings, 3.2.3.1.
- multiple occupancy requirements, 3.1.3.
- noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.
- ovens, 9.10.22.
- penetrations in fire separations and fire-rated assemblies, 3.1.9.1.
- propane ranges, 9.10.22.
- structural, 3.2.2.3.
- structural members, 3.2.3.9.
- tents, 3.1.6.
- testing of integrated fire protection and life safety systems, 9.10.1.2.
- tests, 3.2.9.1.
- Fire-protection rating
  - of closures, 3.1.8.4., 3.1.8.5.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - of doors, 3.1.8.12.
  - exceptions, 9.10.13.2., 9.10.13.5., 9.10.13.7.
  - of fire dampers, 3.1.8.7.
  - tests, 3.1.8.4., 9.10.3.1.
- Fire protection systems, 3.2.5.17., 9.10.18., 9.10.20.5.
- Fire pumps, 3.2.4.9., 3.2.5.9., 3.2.5.18., 9.10.1.3.
- Fire-resistance ratings
  - about, 9.10.3.
  - arena-type building roof assemblies, 3.2.2.17.
  - ceilings, 9.10.3.3.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - determination of, 3.1.7.1., 9.10.3.1.
  - doors, 5.3.1.2.
  - exemptions, 9.10.8., 9.10.8.11., 9.10.14.
  - exits, 9.9.4.2.
  - exposing building face, 3.2.3.7.
  - fire separations, 3.1.7.3.
  - firewalls, 3.1.7.3., 3.1.10.2., 9.10.3.3.
  - floors and floor assemblies, 3.1.7.3., 3.2.1.4., 9.10.3.1., 9.10.3.3., 9.10.8.
  - grease duct enclosures, 3.6.3.5.
  - membrane ceilings, 9.10.3.4.
  - minimum, 3.1.7.4.
  - relation to occupancy and height, 9.10.8.
  - roofs, 9.10.8.
  - separation of suites, 3.3.1.1., 9.10.9.13., 9.10.9.14.
  - steel framing, 9.24.2.4., 9.24.3.2.
  - supporting construction, 3.1.7.5., 9.10.8.3.
  - test methods, 9.10.3.1.
  - vertical fire separations, 9.10.3.3.
  - walls, 9.10.3.3.
  - walls, exterior, 3.1.7.2., 3.1.7.3., 3.2.3.7., 3.2.3.11., 9.10.3.1., 9.10.3.3., 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5.
  - walls, interior, 9.10.3.1., 9.10.3.3.
  - walls, loadbearing, 3.1.7.5., 9.10.8.3.
  - windows, 5.3.1.2.
- Fire-retardant-treated wood
  - in assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 2), 3.2.2.25.
  - in assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 3), 3.2.2.32.
  - in business and personal services occupancy (Group D), 3.2.2.60.
  - in combustible construction, 3.1.4.5., 3.1.4.8.
  - for decorative cladding, 3.1.5.24.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - in low-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 3), 3.2.2.83.
  - in medium-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 2), 3.2.2.76.
  - in mercantile occupancy (Group E), 3.2.2.66.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.5., 3.1.5.12., 3.1.13.8.
  - in roof systems, 3.1.14.1.
- Fire safety
  - and building size, 3.2.1.1., 9.10.8.
  - construction sites, 8.1.1.1.
  - demolition sites, 8.1.1.1.
  - in HVAC systems and equipment, 6.9.1.1., 9.33.6.
  - and occupancy, 9.10.8.
  - self-service storage buildings, 3.9.2.
  - tests, 3.2.9.1.
- Fire separations
  - airtightness of windows and doors in, 5.4.1.2.
  - barrier-free floor areas, 3.3.1.7.
  - boarding and lodging houses, 9.10.9.14.
  - on building face, 3.2.3.2.
  - business and personal services occupancy, 3.3.1.1.
  - care, treatment or detention occupancy, 3.3.3.1.
  - closures in, 3.1.8.1., 3.1.8.4., 3.1.8.5., 9.10.13.
  - in combustible construction, 3.1.8.2.

- construction camps, 9.10.21.2.
  - containment in basements, 3.2.1.5.
  - continuity, 3.1.8.1., 3.1.8.3., 9.10.9.2., 9.10.11.2.
  - crawl spaces, 3.2.2.9., 9.10.9.4.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - and door hold-open devices, 3.1.8.14.
  - and door self-closing devices, 3.1.8.13.
  - dumbwaiters, 3.5.3.2.
  - dwelling units, 3.3.4.2., 9.10.9.11., 9.10.9.12., 9.10.9.13.
  - elevator machine rooms, 3.5.3.3.
  - elevators, 3.2.6.5., 3.5.3.1.
  - exits, 3.4.4.1., 9.9.4.
  - fire dampers in, 3.1.8.7.
  - fire-resistance rating, 3.1.7.3.
  - firewalls, 3.1.10.1.
  - floor assemblies, 3.3.4.2.
  - floors over basements, 3.2.1.4.
  - garages, 9.10.4.3., 9.10.9.16., 9.10.9.17.
  - grease duct enclosures, 3.6.3.5.
  - horizontal, 3.1.8.8.
  - in horizontal service spaces, 3.1.8.3.
  - horizontal service spaces, 3.6.4.2., 9.10.9.10.
  - industrial occupancy (group F), 3.3.5.1., 9.10.9.11., 9.10.9.12., 9.10.9.16., 9.10.9.17.
  - integrity, 9.10.9.3.
  - interconnected floor spaces, 9.10.9.5.
  - interior walls, 9.10.12.3.
  - laboratory ventilation enclosures, 3.3.1.20.
  - libraries, 3.3.2.13.
  - and major occupancy, 9.10.9.11., 9.10.9.16., 9.10.9.17.
  - meeting of two exterior walls, 9.10.12.3.
  - mercantile occupancy (group E), 3.3.1.1.
  - mezzanines, 3.2.8.1.
  - and multiple occupancies, 3.1.3.1., 9.10.9.11., 9.10.10.
  - between openings, 3.2.3.17.
  - openings in, 3.1.8.1., 3.1.8.6., 3.1.8.17., 3.2.8.2., 9.10.13., 9.24.3.7.
  - openings protected by glass blocks or wired glass, 3.1.8.16.
  - operating, recovery and delivery rooms, 3.3.3.6.
  - protected floor spaces, 3.2.8.5.
  - public corridors, 3.3.1.4., 9.10.9.15.
  - rating, 9.10.3.
  - repair garages, 3.3.5.5.
  - residential occupancy (Group C), 3.2.2.47., 3.3.4.2., 9.10.9.11., 9.10.9.12., 9.10.9.14.
  - roof-top enclosures, 3.2.2.14.
  - between rooms and spaces within buildings, 9.10.9.
  - secondary suites, 9.10.9.4., 9.10.9.14., 9.10.9.15., 9.10.10.4., 9.10.11.2., 9.10.12.3.
  - self-service storage buildings, 3.9.3.1.
  - self-storage warehouses, 3.3.5.9.
  - service penetrations, 3.1.9.2. - 3.1.9.6., 9.10.9.6.
  - service rooms, 3.6.2.1., 9.10.8.5., 9.10.10.
  - soffit protection, 9.10.12.4.
  - steel framing, 9.24.2.4., 9.24.3.7.
  - storage of dangerous goods, 3.3.6.2.
  - storage garages, 3.2.1.2., 3.3.4.2., 3.3.5.6., 3.3.5.7.
  - storage rooms, 3.3.4.3., 9.10.10.6.
  - storeys below ground, 3.2.2.15.
  - suites, 3.3.1.1., 3.3.4.2., 9.10.9.13., 9.10.9.14.
  - temperature rise and area limits, 3.1.8.19.
  - theatre stages, 3.3.2.14.
  - thermal breaks in windows and doors in, 5.3.1.2.
  - twenty-minute closures, 3.1.8.12.
  - vehicular passageways, 3.2.3.18.
  - vertical, 3.1.8.8., 3.1.8.9.
  - vertical service spaces, 3.6.3.1.
  - in vertical shafts, 3.1.8.3.
  - vestibules, 3.2.8.4.
  - walkways, 3.2.3.19., 3.2.3.20.
  - wall exposed to another wall, 3.2.3.14.
  - watertightness of windows and doors in, 5.9.2.3.
  - between zones in hospitals or nursing homes, 3.3.3.5.
- Fire stop flaps, 1.4.1.2.[A], 3.6.4.3., 9.10.13.14.
- Fire stops  
(see also Fire blocks)  
definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]  
in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.2.  
pipes and ducts in, 3.1.9.5., 9.10.9.6., 9.33.6.6.  
and service penetrations, 3.1.9.1., 9.10.9.7.
- Firewalls  
combustible projections, 3.1.10.7.  
construction, 9.10.11.  
continuity, 3.1.10.3.  
continuity of insulation, 9.36.2.5.  
definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]  
exemptions, 9.10.11.2.  
exterior walls meeting at, 3.1.10.6.  
and fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.2.  
fire-resistance rating, 3.1.7.3., 3.1.10.2., 9.10.3.3., 9.10.11.3.  
maximum openings in, 3.1.10.5.  
mezzanines, 3.2.8.1.

- parapets, 3.1.10.4.
- party walls as, 9.10.11.1.
- penetrations in, 3.1.9.1.
- separating buildings, 1.3.3.4.[A]
- structural stability, 3.1.10.1., 4.1.5.17.
- support of, 3.1.10.1., 4.1.5.17.
- First storey, 1.4.1.2.[A], 3.2.2.15., 3.2.5.1., 3.2.8.2.
- Fixed seats, 3.3.2.4.
- Fixed seats, bench type without arms, 3.3.2.8.
- Flags, for directing traffic, 8.2.4.2.
- Flame-spread rating
  - bathrooms, 3.1.13.3., 9.10.17.11.
  - business and personal services occupancy, 9.10.17.
  - combustible insulation, 9.10.17.10., 9.10.17.12.
  - combustible piping, 3.1.5.19.
  - combustible skylights, 9.10.17.9.
  - corridors, 9.10.17.2., 9.10.17.5.
  - crawl spaces, 9.18.7.1.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - diffusers and grilles, 9.33.6.10.
  - doors, 3.1.13.2., 9.7.2.2., 9.10.17.1.
  - ducts, linings and coverings, 9.10.17.12., 9.33.6.4.
  - elevator cars, 3.1.13.7., 3.1.13.11.
  - exits, 3.1.13.2., 3.1.13.7., 3.1.13.8., 9.10.17.2.
  - exterior exit passageways, 3.1.13.10., 9.10.17.4.
  - fire-retardant-treated wood, 3.1.4.5.
  - firewalls, 9.10.11.3.
  - foamed plastic insulation, 3.1.5.15., 9.10.17.10.
  - glazing, 3.1.5.4., 3.1.13.2., 9.10.17., 9.10.17.1., 9.10.17.6., 9.10.17.9.
  - gypsum board, 9.29.5.2.
  - high buildings, 3.1.13.7.
  - industrial occupancy, 9.10.17.
  - insulation, 5.9.1.1., 9.25.2.2.
  - insulation in concealed spaces, 9.10.17.
  - insulation in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.14., 3.1.5.15.
  - interior finishes, 3.1.5.12., 9.10.17.
  - light diffusers and lenses, 3.1.13.4., 9.10.17.6., 9.10.17.8.
  - lobbies, 3.1.13.2., 9.10.17.3.
  - mercantile occupancy, 9.10.17.
  - public corridors, 3.1.13.6., 9.10.17.
  - residential occupancy, 3.1.13.3., 9.10.17.
  - service rooms, 3.1.13.7., 9.10.17.
  - skylights, 3.1.5.4., 3.1.13.2., 9.7.2.2., 9.10.17., 9.10.17.1., 9.10.17.6., 9.10.17.9.
  - tests, 3.1.12.1., 9.10.3.2.
  - vehicular passageways, 3.1.13.2.
  - ventilated laboratory enclosures, 6.3.4.4.
  - vestibules, 3.1.13.7.
  - windows, 9.7.2.2.
- Flammable gases (see Combustible gases)
- Flammable liquids
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - door thresholds, 3.3.1.13., 3.4.6.1.
  - piping for, in trench, 6.9.1.2.
  - storage, 3.3.2.16., 3.3.4.3., 3.3.6.2.
  - storage and dispensing rooms, 3.3.6.4.
- Flashing, chimney
  - caps, 9.21.4.6.
  - junctions with other materials, 9.21.4.10.
- Flashing, doors, 9.7.6.2.
- Flashing, roof
  - built-up-roofing at cant strips, 9.26.11.10.
  - built-up-roofing to masonry, 9.26.4.6.
  - built-up-roofing to other than masonry, 9.26.4.7.
  - at intersections, 9.26.4.
  - materials, 9.26.2.1., 9.26.4.2., 9.26.4.3.
  - purpose, 9.26.1.2.
  - sealing and drainage, 5.6.2.1.
  - shingles to masonry, 9.26.4.4.
  - shingles to other than masonry, 9.26.4.5.
  - valley, 9.26.4.3.
- Flashing, skylights, 9.7.6.2.
- Flashing, wall
  - cavity walls, 9.20.13.5., 9.20.13.6.
  - fastening, 9.20.13.2.
  - installation, 9.20.13.3., 9.27.3.8.
  - masonry veneer, 9.20.13.6.
  - masonry walls, 9.20.13.
  - materials, 9.20.13.1., 9.27.3.7.
  - sealing and drainage, 5.6.2.1.
  - stucco, 9.28.1.5.
- Flashing, windows, 9.7.6.2., 9.20.13.3., 9.20.13.4.
- Flash point, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Flat roofs, wind loads, 4.1.7.6.
- Flight, 1.4.1.2.[A] (see also Stairs)
- Floor areas
  - accessible design, 9.5.2.
  - accessible path of travel, 3.3.1.7.
  - care, treatment or detention occupancy, 3.3.3.1.
  - combination rooms, 9.5.1.2.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - emergency access, 3.4.6.18.
  - general requirements, 3.3.1.
  - secondary suites, 9.1.2.1.
  - self-service storage buildings, 3.9.3.

- separation of suites, 3.3.1.1.
- termination, 9.10.12.1.
- Flooring
  - ceramic tile, 9.23.15.5., 9.30.6.
  - finish, 9.30.1.4.
  - in hazardous materials storage area, 3.3.6.7.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.30.
  - parquet, 9.30.4.
  - supports, 9.30.1.3.
  - underlay, 9.30.2.
  - water-resistant membranes, 9.30.1.2.
  - wood strip, 9.23.15.5., 9.30.3.
- Floor joists, support of, 9.15.5.1.
- Floor numbers
  - Arabic numerals, 3.4.6.19., 9.9.11.5.
  - elevator hoistways, 3.5.4.2.
  - exits, 3.4.6.19., 9.9.11.5.
- Floors
  - acting as diaphragms, 4.1.8.15., 4.1.8.18.
  - air barrier systems, 9.25.3.
  - anchorage, 9.20.11.1.
  - cantilevered, 9.23.9.9.
  - combustible elements in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.10.
  - concrete topping, 9.23.4.4.
  - construction camps, 9.10.21.3.
  - dampproofing, 9.13.2.1.
  - drains, 9.31.4.3.
  - fire-resistance ratings, 3.1.7.3., 9.10.3.1., 9.10.8.1., 9.10.8.8.
  - as fire separations, 9.10.9.4.
  - framing, 9.23.4.
  - garages, 9.35.2.2.
  - in heavy timber construction, 3.1.4.7.
  - joists, 9.23.4.1., 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.4., 9.23.9.
  - loads due to use of, 4.1.5.
  - loads on, 9.23.1.1., 9.23.4.1., 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.4.
  - subfloors, 9.23.15.
  - supports, 3.2.1.4., 9.30.1.3.
  - thermal insulation, 9.25.1.1.
  - vibrations, 4.1.3.6.
- Floors on ground, thermal resistance, 9.36.2.8.
- Floors-on-ground
  - concrete, 9.16.4.
  - dampproofing, 9.13.2.1., 9.13.2.6.
  - drainage, 9.16.3.
  - hydrostatic uplift, 9.16.3.2.
  - in dwelling units, 9.16.1.3.
  - in housing and small buildings, 9.16.
    - material beneath, 9.16.2.
    - soil gas control, 9.13.4., 9.25.3.6.
- Flue collars, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Flue pipes, 1.4.1.2.[A], 9.21.1.2.
- Flues, chimney
  - connections, 9.21.2.2.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - dimensions, 9.21.2.4., 9.21.2.5., 9.21.4.4.
  - fireplace, 9.21.2.5.
  - inclination, 9.21.2.3.
  - masonry and concrete, 9.21.
  - oval, 9.21.2.6.
  - rectangular, 9.21.2.5.
  - round, 9.21.2.5.
  - slope, 9.21.2.3.
  - standard for, 9.21.2.
- Foamed plastic
  - dampproofing, 9.13.2.5.
  - insulation, 3.1.5.14., 3.1.5.15., 3.6.3.2., 5.3.1.3., 9.10.17.10., 9.25.2.2., 9.33.6.4.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.2., 3.1.5.7., 3.1.5.14., 3.1.5.15.
  - protection of, 3.1.4.2., 9.10.17.10.
  - vapour barrier, 9.25.4.2.
- Footbridges, 4.1.5.3.
- Footings
  - area for column spacing, 9.15.3.3., 9.15.3.4., 9.15.3.7.
  - chimneys, 9.15.3.1., 9.21.4.3.
  - design, 9.4.4.1.
  - dimensions, 9.15.3.
  - drainage, 9.14.
  - fireplaces, 9.15.3.1., 9.22.1.3.
  - granular drainage layer, 9.14.4.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.15.
  - non-loadbearing masonry walls, 9.15.3.6.
  - projections, 9.15.3.8.
  - stepped, 9.15.3.9.
  - thickness, 9.15.3.8.
  - trenches, 9.12.4.1.
  - width, 9.15.3.3., 9.15.3.4., 9.15.3.5., 9.15.3.6., 9.15.3.8.
- Forced-air furnace, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Forced-air heating systems
  - (see also Ducts; Heating systems and equipment)
  - coupled with heat recovery ventilators, 9.32.3.12.
  - ventilation systems coupled with, 9.32.3.4.
  - ventilation systems not coupled with, 9.32.3.5.
- Formwork, 4.1.1.3.
- Foundations
  - adfreezing, 4.2.4.4.



- backfilling, 4.2.5.8., 9.12.3.
  - capacity in weaker soil or rock, 9.4.4.2.
  - of concrete, 4.2.3.5., 9.3.1.6., 9.3.1.7., 9.15.1.1., 9.15.2., 9.15.4.
  - of concrete block, 9.15.4.2.
  - dampproofing, 9.13.2.
  - deep, 1.4.1.2.[A], 4.2.7.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - for deformation-resistant buildings, 9.12.2.2., 9.15.1.3.
  - depth, 4.2.4.4., 9.12.2.
  - design, 4.2.4., 9.4.4., 9.15.1.1.
  - drainage, 9.14.2., 9.35.3.3.
  - drawings and specifications, 2.2.4.6.[C], 2.2.4.7.[C], 4.2.2.2.
  - dynamic loading, 4.2.4.7.
  - earthquake design, 4.1.8.16., 4.1.8.17.
  - eccentric loading, 4.2.4.6.
  - equivalent approaches to design, 4.1.1.5.
  - excavations, 4.2.5., 9.12.
  - extension above ground, 9.15.4.6.
  - on filled ground, 4.2.4.13.
  - of flat insulating concrete forms, 9.15.1.1., 9.15.3.3., 9.15.4., 9.15.4.5.
  - footing size, 9.15.3.
  - frost action, 4.2.4.4., 9.12.2.2.
  - on frozen ground, 9.12.1.3.
  - for garages and carports, 9.35.3.
  - granular drainage layer, 9.14.4.
  - and groundwater level, 4.2.4.9., 9.4.4.3.
  - for housing and small buildings, 9.15.
  - hydrostatic pressure, 4.2.4.8., 9.16.3.2.
  - insulation, 9.25.2.2., 9.25.2.3.
  - lateral support, 9.15.4.2., 9.15.4.3., 9.15.4.4., 9.15.4.5.
  - limit states design, 4.2.4.1.
  - loads, 4.2.4.1.
  - of masonry, 4.2.3.3., 4.2.3.4., 9.15.1.1., 9.15.2., 9.15.4., 9.15.4.10.
  - materials, 4.2.3., 9.15.2.
  - movement, 4.2.4.1., 9.12.2.2.
  - on organic soils, 9.12.1.1.
  - on permafrost, 4.2.4.10., 9.15.1.2.
  - of permanent form material, 9.15.4.1.
  - pier type, 9.15.2.3.
  - protection from surface water, 5.7.1.1.
  - review, 4.2.2.3.
  - on rock, 9.15.3.1., 9.15.3.2.
  - shallow, 1.4.1.2.[A], 4.2.6.
  - site stability, 4.1.8.17.
  - on sloping ground, 4.2.4.5.
  - special, 4.2.8.
  - stairs with, 9.12.2.2.
  - of steel, 4.2.3.7.
  - structural design, 4.2.4.14.
  - subsurface investigation, 4.2.2.1., 4.2.4.2.
  - supporting floor joists, 9.15.5.1.
  - on swelling and shrinking soils, 4.2.4.11., 9.4.4.4.
  - thermal resistance, 9.36.2.8.
  - thickness, 9.15.4.2., 9.15.4.7.
  - trenches beneath, 9.12.4.
  - vertical reinforcement, 9.15.4.6.
  - walls, 9.4.4.6., 9.15.4., 9.36.2.8.
  - of wood, 4.2.3.1., 4.2.3.2., 9.15.1.1., 9.15.2.4.
  - for wood-frame construction, 9.15.1.1., 9.15.2.4.
- Foundation units
- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - drawing alterations, 2.2.4.7.[C]
- Framing
- anchorage, 9.23.6.
  - ceiling, 9.23.14.
  - drilling, 9.23.5.1.
  - maximum spans, 9.23.4.
  - notching, 9.23.5.2.
  - over openings, 9.23.12.
  - roof, 9.23.14.
  - sheet steel stud, 9.24.
  - supported on masonry or concrete, 9.20.8.
  - trusses, 9.23.14.11.
  - wood-frame construction, 9.23.
- Freezers, walk-in, 3.1.4.2., 3.1.5.7., 9.10.17.10.
- Freezing, protection from (see Protection from freezing)
- Frost action
- (see also Frost penetration, depth; Protection from freezing)
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - floors-on-ground, 9.16.2.2.
  - soil under foundations, 9.4.4.4.
- Frost penetration, depth, 1.1.3.2., 9.12.2.2.
- Fuel dispensing facilities, 3.3.5.8., 9.10.1.3.
- Fuel supply, shut-off valves, 3.2.7.7.
- Functional statements
- application, 3.1.[A]
  - list of, 3.2.1.[A]
- Furnaces
- capacity, 9.33.3.1., 9.33.5.1.
  - clearances, 6.2.1.5., 9.33.5.2., 9.33.6.8.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]

- forced-air, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- installation, 6.2.1.6., 9.33.5.2.
- performance requirements, 9.36.3.10.
- plenums, 9.33.6.6., 9.33.6.7., 9.33.6.8.
- ventilation, 9.32.3.4.

Furring

- cladding, 9.27.5.3.
- dimensions, 9.29.3.1.
- fastening, 9.29.3.2.
- interior finish, 9.29.3.
- metal thickness, 9.24.1.3.
- nailing, 9.29.3.2.
- stucco lath, 9.28.4.4.

**G**

Gable roofs

- snow and rain loads, 4.1.6.9.
- wind loads, 4.1.7.6.

Galvanized sheet metal, 9.3.3.2.

Gambrel roof

- fire blocks, 9.10.16.1.
- venting, 9.19.1.4.

Garages

- (see also Carports)
- clear height, 3.3.5.4.
- columns, 9.35.4.2., 9.35.4.3.
- detached, 9.10.14.4., 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.4., 9.10.15.5., 9.35.3.3.
- doors, 9.10.13.15., 9.36.2.9.
- for dwelling units, 9.7.5.2., 9.10.9.16., 9.35.
- exhaust discharge into, 6.3.2.10.
- floors, 9.3.1.6., 9.35.2.2.
- foundations, 9.35.3.
- guards and guardrails, 9.8.8.4.
- interconnection of ducting, 6.3.2.7., 9.33.6.7.
- lighting, 9.34.2.6.
- loads on floor or roof, 4.1.5.3.
- open-air, 9.10.14.4.
- pressure, 6.3.1.4.
- repair (see Repair garages)
- resistance to forced entry, 9.7.5.2.
- storage (see Storage garages)
- ventilation, 3.3.5.4., 6.3.1.4., 9.32.1.1.
- walls, 9.35.4.1., 9.35.4.3.

Gas-burning equipment, installation standard, 6.2.1.5., 9.33.5.2.

Gases, hazardous, 6.9.1.2.

Gas mains, under buildings, 3.2.3.21.

Gas vents

- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- materials and installation, 9.33.10.1.
- sealing around, 9.25.3.3.

Girders, in heavy timber construction, 3.1.4.7.

Glass

- (see also Transparent panels)
- area limits, maximum, 9.6.1.3.
- design, 9.6.1.3.
- doors, 3.3.1.19., 9.6.1.4., 9.7.5.2.
- earthquake design, 4.1.8.18.
- in exits, 3.4.1.8.
- in fire separations, 3.2.3.13., 5.3.1.2., 9.10.13.5.
- in guards, 9.8.8.7.
- panels, 3.3.1.19.
- public areas, 9.6.1.4., 9.7.5.
- safety (see Safety glass)
- sidelights, 9.6.1.4.
- standards for, 5.9.1.1., 9.6.1.2., 9.6.1.3., 9.6.1.4., 9.7.5.2., 9.8.8.7.
- structural design basis, 4.3.6.
- structural strength, 9.6.1.3.
- thermal breaks, 5.9.2.4., 9.7.3.3.
- thickness, 9.6.1.3.
- types of, 9.6.1.4.
- wired (see Wired glass)

Glass block assemblies, thermal characteristics, 9.36.2.7.

Glass blocks

- area limits, 3.1.8.18.
- as closures, 3.1.8.5., 9.10.13.7.
- excluding, and temperature limits, 3.1.8.19.
- in exits, 9.9.4.3. - 9.9.4.6.
- in fire separations, 3.1.8.16.
- not to be used as closures, 3.2.3.5.
- not in fireplaces or chimneys, 9.20.2.3.
- protection of exit facilities, 3.2.3.13.
- reinforcing, 9.20.9.6.
- in unprotected openings, 3.2.3.12., 9.10.14.4.

Glass-reinforced polyester roofing, 9.26.14.1.

Glazed architectural structures (see Fenestration)

Glazed openings, 9.10.15., 9.10.15.2., 9.10.15.4.

Glazing

- in doors, 9.7.1.1.
- exit restrictions, 3.4.1.10.
- in fire separations, 3.1.8.16.
- in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.4.
- in public areas, 9.8.8.1.
- in unprotected openings, 3.2.3.12.

- wired glass, 3.1.8.16., 3.1.8.18., 3.1.8.19., 3.2.3.5.
- Glued-laminated timber
  - beams, 9.23.4.1., 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.4.
  - flooring, 3.1.4.7.
  - lintels, 9.23.12.3.
- Grab bars
  - bathtubs, 3.7.2.9., 3.8.3.17.
  - loads on, 9.31.2.3.
  - showers, 3.8.3.16.
  - universal washrooms, 3.8.3.12.
  - washrooms, 3.7.2.8., 3.8.3.11.
- Grade, 1.4.1.2.[A], 3.2.3.18., 3.2.5.1.
- Grading, site
  - backfill, 9.8.10.3., 9.12.3.2.
  - environmental separation, 5.1.2.1.
  - excavations, 9.14.4.3.
  - surface drainage, 9.14.6.
  - water control, 5.7.1.1., 9.16.3., 9.18.5.
- Granular material
  - beneath floors-on-ground, 9.16.1.1., 9.16.2.1.
  - beneath footings and foundations, 9.14.2.1., 9.14.4.
- Grease duct enclosures, 3.6.3.5.
- Ground cover
  - crawl spaces, heated, 9.18.6.2.
  - crawl spaces, unheated, 9.18.6.1.
  - warm-air plenums, 9.18.7.1.
- Groundwater
  - around excavations, 4.2.5.5.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - and foundations, 2.2.4.6.[C], 4.2.2.1., 4.2.2.4., 4.2.4.3., 4.2.4.9.
  - level, 1.4.1.2.[A], 4.2.4.9., 9.4.4.3., 9.14.5.3., 9.15.3.4., 9.16.3.1.
  - protection from, 5.7.3.
- Group A occupancy (see Assembly occupancy)
- Group B occupancy (see Care, treatment or detention occupancy)
- Group C occupancy (see Residential occupancy)
- Group D occupancy (see Business and personal services occupancy)
- Group E occupancy (see Mercantile occupancy)
- Group F occupancy (see Industrial occupancy)
- Grout, 9.20.3.2.
- Guards (devices)
  - balconies and decks, 4.1.7.5., 9.8.8.1., 9.8.8.3.
  - cane-detectable, on doors, 3.8.3.6.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - doorways, 9.8.8.1.
  - dwelling units, 3.3.4.7., 9.8.1.
  - exits, 3.4.6.6.
  - fire escapes, 3.4.7.6.
  - fixed seats, 3.3.2.9.
  - garages, 3.3.5.4., 9.8.8.4.
  - glass, 9.8.8.7.
  - height, 3.3.1.18., 3.3.5.4., 3.4.6.6., 9.8.8.3.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.8.8.
  - industrial occupancies, 3.3.5.10.
  - landings, 3.4.6.6., 9.8.8.3.
  - loads, 3.3.5.4., 4.1.5.14., 9.8.8.2., 9.8.8.4.
  - means of egress, 9.9.1.1.
  - to not facilitate climbing, 9.8.8.6.
  - openable windows, 3.3.4.8.
  - openings through, 3.3.1.18., 3.4.6.6., 3.4.7.6., 9.8.8.5.
  - porches, 9.8.8.3.
  - as protection for vehicles, 4.1.5.15.
  - ramps, 3.4.6.6., 3.8.3.5., 9.8.8.1., 9.8.8.4.
  - secondary suites, 9.8.1.
  - stairs, 3.4.6.6.
  - where required, 9.8.8.1.
  - windows in public areas, 3.3.1.19.
  - windows in residential occupancy, 9.8.8.1.
- Guards (human), for danger zones, 8.2.1.4.
- Gypsum board
  - application standard, 9.29.5.1.
  - on exposing building face, 3.2.3.7.
  - fasteners for, 9.29.5.5.
  - fastening, 9.29.5.8., 9.29.5.9.
  - as fire separation in exit, 9.9.4.2.
  - as fire stop, 3.1.11.7.
  - installation, 9.29.5.3., 9.29.5.8., 9.29.5.9.
  - as interior finish, 9.29.5.
  - material standard, 9.29.5.2.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.13.
  - standards, 9.10.9.2.
  - as thermal barrier, 3.1.5.14., 3.1.5.15.
  - as wall sheathing, 9.23.17.2., 9.23.17.3.
- Gypsum lath, 9.29.4.1.

## H

Hallways (see Corridors)

Handrails

- in aisles with steps, 3.3.2.10.
- attachment, 9.8.7.7.
- continuity, 3.4.6.5., 9.8.7.2.
- design, 9.8.7.7.
- in dwelling units, 3.3.4.7., 9.8.1., 9.8.7.1.
- ergonomic design, 9.8.7.5.

- graspability, 3.4.6.5., 9.8.7.5.
  - height, 3.4.6.5., 9.8.7.4.
  - in housing and small buildings, 9.8.7.
  - loads, 3.4.6.5., 4.1.5.14., 9.8.7.7.
  - in means of egress, 9.9.1.1.
  - projecting into means of egress, 3.4.3.3.
  - projecting into stair or ramp, 9.8.7.6.
  - for ramps, 3.4.6.5., 3.8.3.5., 9.8.7.
  - in secondary suites, 9.8.1., 9.8.7.
  - for stairs, 3.4.6.5., 3.4.6.9., 9.8.7.
  - termination, 9.8.7.3.
- Hardboard**
- as cladding, 9.27.2.4., 9.27.3.6., 9.27.5.
  - fastening, 9.29.7.3.
  - as insulating finish, 9.25.5.1.
  - as interior finish, 9.29.7.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1., 9.27.9.1., 9.29.7.1.
  - nailing, 9.29.7.3.
  - as siding, 9.27.2.4., 9.27.3.6., 9.27.9.
  - thickness, 9.3.2.7., 9.29.7.2.
  - as underlay, 9.30.2.2.
  - as wall sheathing, 9.25.5.1.
- Hardware for doors**
- access to exit, 3.3.1.13.
  - automatic locking devices, 3.3.4.5.
  - bolts, 9.7.5.2.
  - closers in barrier-free path of travel, 3.8.3.6.
  - closures, 3.1.8.5.
  - door release devices, 3.3.1.13., 3.3.2.7., 3.4.6.16., 9.9.6.7.
  - height, 3.4.6.16.
  - hinges, 9.7.5.2.
  - hold-open devices, 3.1.8.14., 9.10.13.11.
  - locks and latches, 3.3.1.13., 3.4.6.16., 3.4.6.17., 3.4.6.18., 9.7.5.2., 9.9.6.7., 9.9.6.8., 9.10.13.9.
  - power operators, 3.8.3.6.
  - self-closing devices, 3.1.8.13., 3.4.6.13., 9.9.6.7., 9.10.13.10., 9.10.13.15.
  - strikeplates, 9.7.5.2.
  - on transparent doors and panels, 3.3.1.19.
  - universal washrooms, 3.8.3.12.
- Hatchways, 9.19.2.1., 9.25.3.3.**
- Hazardous substances**
- explosion venting, 3.3.1.20.
  - fire detectors, 3.2.4.10.
  - fire protection, 9.10.1.3.
  - heat and smoke detection, 9.10.18.4.
  - prohibited in basements, 3.3.5.3.
  - safety within floor areas, 3.3.1.2.
  - storage, 9.10.1.3.
- Headroom clearance**
- access to exits, 9.9.3.4.
  - doorways, 3.4.3.4., 9.5.5.1.
  - exits, 3.4.3.4., 9.9.3.4.
  - stairways, 3.4.3.4., 9.8.2.2.
- Hearths, fireplace**
- extensions, 9.22.5.1.
  - standard for, 9.22.5.
  - support, 9.22.5.2.
- Heat detectors, 1.4.1.2.[A], 9.10.18.3., 9.10.18.4.**
- Heating appliances**
- capacity, 9.33.3.1., 9.33.5.1.
  - design, 6.4.1.2., 9.33.5.3.
  - installation, 6.2.1.6.
  - installation standards, 6.2.1.5., 9.33.5.2., 9.33.5.3.
  - location, 6.4.1.1.
- Heating coils, service water heaters, 9.31.6.5.**
- Heating systems and equipment**
- access, 6.2.1.6., 6.8.1.1., 9.33.4.4.
  - asbestos in, 6.2.1.7., 9.33.4.8.
  - capacity, 9.33.3.1., 9.33.5.1.
  - cleaning, 6.2.1.6., 9.33.4.4.
  - continuity of insulation, 9.36.3.5.
  - design, 6.2.1.1., 6.4.1.2., 9.33.1.1., 9.33.4.1., 9.33.5.3.
  - drawings and specifications, 2.2.6.2.[C]
  - energy efficiency, 9.36.
  - fire safety characteristics, 6.9.1.1., 9.33.6.2. - 9.33.6.4.
  - installation, 6.2.1., 9.33.1.1., 9.33.4.1.
  - installation standards, 6.2.1.1., 6.2.1.5., 9.33.5.2., 9.33.5.3.
  - location, 6.4.1.1.
  - performance requirements, 9.36.3.10.
  - protection from freezing, 6.2.1.6., 9.33.4.5.
  - in residential buildings, 9.33.2.1.
  - solid-fuel-burning, 6.2.1.5., 9.33.5.3.
  - structural movement, 4.1.8.18., 6.2.1.4., 9.33.4.7.
  - system pressure, 6.2.1.3., 9.33.4.6.
  - temperature controls, 9.33.4.3., 9.36.3.6.
- Heating, ventilating and air-conditioning (HVAC)**
- systems and equipment
  - access, 6.2.1.1., 6.2.1.6., 6.8.1.1., 9.33.4.4.
  - air intakes and outlet dampers, 9.36.3.3.
  - airtightness, 9.36.2.10.
  - application of Code, 6
  - asbestos in, 6.2.1.7., 9.33.4.8.
  - cleaning, 6.2.1.6., 9.33.4.4.
  - contaminant transfer prevention, 9.33.4.8.
  - continuity of insulation, 9.36.3.5.

- design, 6.2., 6.2.1.1., 6.4.1.2., 9.32.3.2., 9.33.1.1., 9.33.4.1., 9.33.5.3.
- drawings and specifications, 2.2.6.2.[C]
- energy efficiency, 9.36., 9.36.3.
- energy performance calculations, 9.36.5.7.
- energy performance modeling, 9.36.5.11., 9.36.5.15.
- equipment and ducts, 9.36.3.2.
- fire safety characteristics, 6.9.1.1., 9.33.6.2. - 9.33.6.4.
- heat recovery, 9.36.3.8., 9.36.3.9.
- humidification, 6.3.2.16., 9.36.3.7.
- installation, 6.2., 9.32.3.2., 9.33.1.1., 9.33.4.1.
- installation standards, 6.2.1.1., 6.2.1.5., 9.33.5.2., 9.33.5.3.
- outdoor design conditions, 6.2.1.2.
- performance requirements, 9.36.3.10.
- pipng, 9.36.3.4.
- protection from freezing, 6.2.1.6., 9.33.4.5.
- structural movement, 4.1.8.18., 6.2.1.4., 9.33.4.7.
- system pressure, 6.2.1.3., 9.33.4.6.
- temperature controls, 9.36.3.6.
- Heat pumps, 9.36.3.6., 9.36.3.10.
- Heat recovery
  - indoor pools and hot tubs, 9.36.3.8.
  - ventilation systems, 9.36.3.9.
- Heat recovery ventilators
  - balancing, 9.32.3.4.
  - capacity, 6.3.1.5., 9.32.3.10.
  - condensate, 9.32.3.12.
  - installation, 6.3.1.5., 9.32.3.12.
  - standards for, 9.32.3.10.
- Heat transfer
  - application of Code, 5.1.1.1.
  - calculations and analyses, 5.2.1.3.
  - exterior insulation finish systems, 5.9.4.1.
  - performance in doors, windows and skylights, 5.9.2.4., 9.7.3.2.
  - performance in other fenestration assemblies, 5.9.3.3.
  - and required thermal insulation, 9.25.2.1.
  - thermal resistance of assemblies, 5.3.1., 5.3.1.2.
- Heavy timber construction
  - assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 1), 3.2.2.21.
  - assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 3), 3.2.2.30., 3.2.2.31.
  - assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 4), 3.2.2.35.
  - construction of exposing building faces, 9.10.15.5.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - dimensions, 3.1.4.7.
  - exposing building faces, 9.10.14.5.
  - fire resistance, 9.10.6.2.
  - fire safety requirements, 3.1.4.7.
  - flame-spread rating, 3.1.13.8.
  - high-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 1), 3.2.2.71.
  - low-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 3), 3.2.2.87., 3.2.2.88.
  - roofs, 3.2.2.16.
  - structural members, 3.2.3.9.
  - walkways, 3.2.3.19.
  - when permissible, 3.1.4.6., 3.2.2.16.
- Height
  - access to exit, 3.3.1.8., 9.9.3.4.
  - between landings, 9.8.3.3., 9.8.4.4., 9.8.5.5.
  - ceilings, 9.5.3.
  - doorways, 9.5.5., 9.9.6.2.
  - exits, 9.9.3.4., 9.9.6.2.
  - guards, 9.8.8.3.
  - handrails, 9.8.7.4.
  - mezzanines, 9.5.3.2.
  - over landings, 9.8.6.4.
  - over ramps, 9.8.5.3.
  - over stairs, 9.8.2.2.
  - rooms and spaces, 9.5.3.1.
  - storage garages, 9.5.3.3., 9.9.3.4.
- Helicopter landing areas, 3.2.4.7., 3.2.4.16., 4.1.5.13., 9.23.16.7.
- Heritage buildings, 1.1.1.1.
- High buildings
  - additional requirements, 3.2.6.1.
  - anchorage, 9.23.6.1.
  - central alarm and control facility, 3.2.6.7.
  - construction site protection of public, 8.2.3.2.
  - interior finishes, 3.1.13.7.
  - smoke control system testing, 3.2.6.9.
  - smoke movement limits, 3.2.6.2.
  - vertical transportation in, 3.5.1.1.
  - voice communication systems, 3.2.6.8.
  - wind loads, 4.1.7.3.
- High-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 1)
  - building classification, 3.1.2.1.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - egress doorways, 3.3.1.5.
  - fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.1., 3.2.4.3.
  - fire protection, 3.2.2.70. - 3.2.2.73.
  - occupant load, 3.1.17.1.
  - safety within floor areas, 3.3.1.2.

- Hipped roofs, wind loads, 4.1.7.6.
  - Hold-open devices, 3.1.8.14., 9.10.13.11.
  - Horizontal exits
    - balconies, 3.4.6.10.
    - bridges, 3.4.6.10.
    - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
    - hose station beside, 3.2.5.11.
    - and other types of exits, 3.4.1.4.
    - restricted use, 3.4.1.6.
    - vestibules, 3.4.6.10.
    - width, 3.4.6.10.
  - Horizontal service spaces
    - access, 3.6.4.5.
    - application of Code, 3.6.1.1., 3.6.4.1.
    - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
    - fire blocks in, 3.1.11.5.
    - above fire separations, 3.1.8.3., 9.10.9.10.
    - fire separations for, 3.6.4.2.
    - sprinkler systems, 3.2.5.14.
  - Hose connections, 3.2.5.9., 3.2.5.10.
  - Hospitals, 3.1.8.13., 3.3.3.5., 3.4.1.6.
  - Hot tubs, heat recovery, 9.36.3.8.
  - Hot water supply, 9.31.4.2.
  - Housing and small buildings
    - (see also Dwelling units)
    - air leakage, 9.25.
    - cladding, 9.27.
    - columns, 9.17.
    - concrete materials, 9.3.1.
    - condensation control, 9.25.
    - crawl spaces, 9.18.
    - dampproofing, 9.13.
    - design of areas and spaces, 9.5.
    - drainage, 9.14.
    - electrical facilities, 9.34.
    - energy efficiency, 9.36.
    - excavations, 9.12.
    - fire protection, 9.10.
    - fireplaces, 9.22.
    - flooring, 9.30.
    - floors-on-ground, 9.16.
    - footings and foundations, 9.15.
    - glass, 9.6.
    - heat transfer, 9.25.
    - heating and air-conditioning, 9.33.
    - interior wall and ceiling finishes, 9.29.
    - lumber and wood products for, 9.3.2.
    - masonry and concrete chimneys, 9.21.
    - masonry and insulating concrete walls, 9.20.
    - materials, systems and equipment, 9.3.
    - means of egress, 9.9.
    - plumbing facilities, 9.31.
    - roof spaces, 9.19.
    - roofing, 9.26.
    - sheet steel stud wall framing, 9.24.
    - soil gas control, 9.13.
    - sound control, 9.11.
    - stairs, ramps, handrails and guards, 9.8.
    - structural requirements, 9.4.
    - stucco, 9.28.
    - ventilation, 9.32.
    - waterproofing, 9.13.
    - windows, doors and skylights, 9.7.
    - wood-frame construction, 9.23.
  - Humidification, 6.3.2.16., 9.36.3.7.
  - HVAC (see Heating, ventilating and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems and equipment)
  - Hydrants, 3.2.5.5., 3.2.5.15.
  - Hydronic heating
    - design, 9.33.4.1.
    - installation, 9.33.4.2.
  - Hydrostatic pressure, 4.2.4.8., 5.7.2., 9.13.3.1., 9.16.3.2.
- I**
- Ice, accumulation, 4.1.6.2., 4.1.6.15., 4.1.7.11., 5.3.1.2., 5.6.2.2.
  - Impeded egress zones
    - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
    - door release hardware, 3.4.6.16.
    - doors and door hardware, 3.3.1.13.
    - fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.1.
    - fire annunciators, 3.2.4.8.
    - sliding doors, 3.4.6.14.
    - sprinkler system requirements, 3.2.2.19.
  - Importance categories for buildings, 4.1.2.1.
  - Importance factors
    - earthquake loads, 4.1.8.5.
    - snow loads, 4.1.6.2.
    - wind loads, 4.1.7.3.
  - Incinerator rooms, 3.6.2.4., 9.10.10.5.
  - Indirect service water heaters (see Service water heaters)
  - Indoor design temperature, 5.2.1.2., 5.3.1.2., 5.5.1.2., 9.33.3.1.
  - Indoor pools
    - heat recovery, 9.36.3.8.
    - temperature controls, 9.36.4.6.

- water heaters, 9.36.4.2.
- Industrial occupancy (Group F)
- (see also High-hazard industrial occupancy;
  - Low-hazard industrial occupancy;
  - Medium-hazard industrial occupancy)
  - classification, 9.10.2.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - door thresholds, rooms with flammable liquids, 3.3.1.13., 3.4.6.1.
  - exposing building face, 9.10.14.5.
  - fire alarm systems, 9.10.18.
  - fire-resistance rating, 9.10.8.
  - fire separations, 9.10.9.11., 9.10.9.12.
  - flame-spread rating, 9.10.17.
  - guards, 3.3.5.10., 9.8.8.5.
  - ramps and stairways, 3.3.1.14., 3.4.6.7., 3.4.6.8.
  - self-service storage buildings, 3.9.1.3.
  - washrooms, 3.7.2.
- Information required for proposed work, 2.2.2.1.[C]
- Institutional occupancy (see Care, treatment or detention occupancy)
- Insulation
- attic or roof spaces, 9.25.2.4.
  - basements, 9.25.2.2.
  - combustible, in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.14., 3.1.5.15.
  - concealed spaces, 3.1.11.2.
  - continuity of, 9.36.2.5.
  - crawl spaces, 9.25.2.2., 9.25.2.3.
  - ducts, 3.1.5.18., 6.3.2.5., 9.32.3.11., 9.33.6.4.
  - environmental separation, 5.1.1.1.
  - exposure to exterior space on ground, 5.1.2.1.
  - foamed plastic, 3.1.5.14., 3.1.5.15., 5.3.1.3., 9.10.17.10., 9.25.2.2., 9.33.6.4.
  - foundations, 9.12.2.2., 9.25.2.2., 9.25.2.3.
  - installation, 5.3.1.3., 9.25.2.3., 9.27.3.4.
  - loose-fill, 9.25.2.4.
  - materials, 9.25.2.2.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1., 9.25.2.2.
  - pipes, 3.1.5.18., 6.5.1.1., 9.33.8.2., 9.33.8.4.
  - plenums, 9.33.6.4.
  - properties, 9.25.5.1.
  - protection of, 9.10.17.10., 9.25.2.3.
  - requirement for, 5.3.1.1., 9.25.2.1.
  - roofs, 9.25.2.2.
  - slabs-on-ground, 9.25.2.3.
  - spray-applied, 5.3.1.3., 9.25.2.5.
  - supported by gypsum board, 9.29.5.4.
  - thermal, 9.25.2.
  - thermal resistance, 5.3.1.
  - walls, 9.25.2.4.
  - wall sheathing, 9.23.17.2., 9.23.17.3., 9.27.3.4.
  - wires and cables, 3.1.5.21.
- Interconnected floor spaces, 1.4.1.2.[A], 3.2.3.2., 3.2.8.2., 3.2.8.8., 9.10.9.5.
- Interconnection of duct systems, 6.3.2.7., 6.3.2.10., 9.33.6.7.
- Interior finishes
- for braced wall panels, 9.23.13.6.
  - ceilings, 9.23.9.4., 9.29.
  - dampproofing, 9.13.2.5.
  - fastening to steel studs, 9.24.1.4.
  - flame-spread limits, 9.10.17.
  - flame-spread rating, 3.1.13.2.
  - floors, 9.30.
  - gypsum board, 9.29.5.
  - hardboard, 9.29.7.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.12.
  - insulating fibreboard, 9.29.8.
  - masonry walls, 9.20.13.9.
  - materials, 3.1.13.1.
  - OSB, 9.29.9.
  - particle board, 9.29.9.
  - plastering, 9.29.4.
  - plywood, 9.29.6.
  - public corridor ceilings, 3.1.13.6.
  - on steel studs, 9.24.1.5.
  - support, 9.23.10.5., 9.24.3.4.
  - tiles, 9.29.10.
  - underground walkways, 3.1.13.9.
  - waferboard, 9.29.9.
  - walls, 9.29.
  - waterproof, 9.29.2.

## J

- Janitors' rooms, 3.2.4.10., 3.3.1.21., 9.10.18.4.
- Joints and connections for ducts, 9.33.6.2., 9.33.6.3., 9.33.6.6., 9.33.6.7.
- Joists
- bearing, 9.23.9.1.
  - cantilevered, 9.23.9.9.
  - ceilings, 9.23.14.1., 9.23.14.7.
  - continuity, 9.23.14.1.
  - dimensions, 9.23.4.1., 9.23.14.7., 9.23.14.10.
  - end bearing length, 9.23.14.3.
  - floors, 9.23.4.1., 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.4., 9.23.9.
  - framing around openings, 9.23.14.2.

header, 9.23.9.5., 9.23.9.7.  
lumber grade, 9.3.2.1.  
nailing, 9.23.3.4., 9.23.9.3., 9.23.14.9.  
preservative treatment, 9.23.2.2., 9.23.2.3.  
roofs, 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.5., 9.23.14.1., 9.23.14.7.,  
9.23.14.9.  
spans, 9.23.4.1., 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.4., 9.23.4.5.,  
9.23.14.7., 9.23.14.10.  
strapping, bridging and furring, 9.23.9.4.  
support, 9.23.14.7.  
supported on beams, 9.23.9.2.  
supported on masonry or concrete, 9.20.8.2.,  
9.20.8.3., 9.21.5.3., 9.23.2.2., 9.23.2.3.  
supporting walls, 9.23.9.8.  
tail, 9.23.9.7.  
trimmer, 9.23.9.6.  
wood, 9.23.4.1., 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.4., 9.23.4.5.  
Junction boxes, electrical, 3.1.5.2., 9.10.9.6.

## K

### Kitchens

commercial cooking equipment, 3.3.1.2., 6.3.1.7.,  
9.10.1.4., 9.10.13.13.  
emergency lighting, 3.2.7.3.  
exhaust ducts, 3.1.8.8., 3.1.8.9., 6.3.2.10., 9.32.3.11.  
exhaust fans, 9.32.3.3., 9.32.3.7.  
exhaust outlets, 6.3.2.10.  
grease duct enclosures, 3.6.3.5.  
loads on floor or roof, 4.1.5.3.

## L

### Laboratories

enclosure exhaust ventilation, 3.3.1.20., 6.3.4.3.  
live loads on floor or roof, 4.1.5.3.  
ventilated enclosure construction, 6.3.4.4.

### Landings

barrier-free, 3.8.3.5.  
configurations, 9.8.6.3.  
dimensions, 3.4.3.4., 3.4.6.4., 9.8.6.3.  
at doorways, 3.4.3.3., 3.4.6.3., 9.8.6.2., 9.8.6.3.,  
9.9.6.1.  
fire escapes, 3.4.7.7.  
guards, 3.4.6.6., 9.8.8.  
height between, 3.4.6.3., 9.8.3.3., 9.8.4.4., 9.8.5.5.  
height over, 9.8.6.4.  
in housing and small buildings, 9.8.6.  
omitted, 3.4.6.3.  
openings in, 3.4.6.4.

as part of exit, 9.8.1.3.  
on ramps, 9.8.6.  
slip-resistance, 3.4.6.1., 9.8.9.6.  
on stairs, 9.8.6.

### Lateral loads

anchorage, 9.23.6.1.  
braced wall bands, 9.23.13.4., 9.23.13.5.  
braced wall panels, 9.23.13.5., 9.23.13.6.  
bracing considerations, 9.23.13.7.  
bracing requirements, 9.23.13., 9.23.13.1.  
fasteners for framing, 9.23.3.4.  
fasteners for sheathing and subfloors, 9.23.3.5.  
floor joists supporting walls, 9.23.9.8.  
lumber roof sheathing, 9.23.16.5.  
materials, 9.23.13.6.  
particleboard, OSB or waferboard finishes, 9.29.9.3.  
plywood finish, 9.29.6.3.  
roof sheathing, required, 9.23.16.1.  
spacing of nails in gypsum board, 9.29.5.8.  
spacing of screws in gypsum board, 9.29.5.9.

### Lath, plaster

gypsum, 9.29.4.1.  
metal, 9.29.4.1.

### Lath, stucco

attachment to sheathing, 9.27.5.1.  
dimensions, 9.28.4.3.  
fastening, 9.27.5.7., 9.27.7.5., 9.28.4.6.  
installation, 9.28.4.2., 9.28.4.5., 9.28.4.6.  
materials, 9.28.4.1., 9.28.4.3.  
nailing, 9.27.5., 9.28.4.6.  
self-furring, 9.28.4.4.  
standard for, 9.28.4.  
stapling, 9.27.5., 9.28.4.6.  
uses, 9.28.1.2.

Lattice structures, ice loading, 4.1.6.15.

Laundry-drying equipment, 9.32.1.3.

Laundry rooms, 3.2.4.10., 3.3.1.22., 9.10.18.4.

Lavatories, 3.7.2.3., 3.8.2.8., 3.8.3.15.

Libraries, 3.3.2.13., 4.1.5.3.

### Licensed beverage establishments

access to exit, 3.3.1.17.  
principal entrances, 3.4.2.6.

Life safety systems, 3.2.9.1., 9.10.1.2.

Light diffusers and lenses, 3.1.13.4., 9.10.17.6.,  
9.10.17.8.

### Lighting

basements, 9.34.2.3., 9.34.2.4.  
elements, 3.1.13.1., 9.10.17.6., 9.10.17.8.  
emergency, 3.2.7.3., 3.2.7.4., 9.9.12.3., 9.34.2.7., 9.34.3.



- entrances, 9.34.2.1.
  - exits, 3.2.7.1.
  - fixtures, recessed, 3.2.7.2., 9.34.1.4.
  - garages and carports, 9.34.2.6.
  - levels, 9.9.12.2., 9.9.12.3.
  - levels, minimum, 3.2.7.1.
  - means of egress, 9.9.12.
  - outlets for, 3.2.7.1., 9.34.2.
  - public corridors, 3.2.7.1., 9.9.12.2., 9.9.12.3.
  - public and service areas, 9.34.2.7.
  - stairways, 9.34.2.3.
- Lightning protection systems, 3.6.1.3.
- Limiting distance
- between construction camp buildings, 9.10.21.5.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - exposing building face, 3.2.3.5., 3.2.3.6., 3.2.3.7., 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5.
  - exterior walls, 9.10.3.3.
  - fire department response time, 3.2.3.1.
  - and firefighting services, 9.10.15.3.
  - fire-resistance rating exception, 3.1.7.2.
  - less than 1.2 m, 3.2.3.5.
  - low-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 3), 3.2.3.11.
  - maximum concentrated area, 3.2.3.1.
  - spatial separation between buildings, 3.2.3.1., 9.10.14.3., 9.10.15.
  - unprotected openings, 3.2.3.1., 3.2.3.10.
  - wall exposed to another wall, 3.2.3.14.
- Limit states design
- application, 4.1.3.
  - dead load, 4.1.3.2.
  - definition of terms, 4.1.3.1.
  - effect of factored loads, 4.1.3.2.
  - fatigue check, 4.1.3.3.
  - importance factors, 4.1.6.2., 4.1.8.5.
  - load factors, 4.1.3.2.
  - resistance, 4.1.3.2.
  - serviceability check, 4.1.3.4.
  - strength and stability check, 4.1.3.2.
- Linen chutes, 3.6.3.3., 9.10.1.3.
- Liners, chimney
- clay, 9.21.3.3.
  - clearances, 9.21.3.8.
  - concrete, 9.21.3.5.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - extensions, 9.21.3.10.
  - firebrick, 9.21.3.4.
  - installation, 9.21.3.7.
  - joints, 9.21.3.2.
  - materials, 9.21.3.1.
  - metal, 9.21.3.6.
  - mortar, 9.21.3.9.
  - separation, 9.21.4.9.
  - standard for, 9.21.3.
- Liners, fireplace
- firebrick, 9.22.2.2.
  - standard for, 9.22.2.
  - steel, 9.22.2.3.
  - wall thickness, 9.22.3.
- Linings
- for ducts and plenums, 3.1.5.18., 6.3.2.5., 9.33.6.4.
  - for radiators and convectors, 6.4.3.1., 9.33.7.1.
- Lintels
- dimensions, 9.23.12.3.
  - fireplaces, 9.22.1.2.
  - nauling, 9.23.12.3.
  - spans, 9.23.12.3.
  - steel, 3.2.2.3., 9.10.7.1., 9.20.5.2., 9.22.1.2.
  - supporting masonry over openings, 9.20.5.2.
  - wood, 9.23.12.
- Liquids, combustible (see Combustible liquids)
- Liquids, flammable (see Flammable liquids)
- Liquids, hazardous, 6.9.1.2.
- Live loads (see Loads)
- Loadbearing, definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Loads
- in attics, 9.4.2.4.
  - bearing pressure for soil or rock, 9.4.4.1.
  - climatic, 1.1.3., 5.2.1.1.
  - combinations, 4.1.3.2.
  - concentrated, 4.1.5.9.
  - dead, 1.4.1.2.[A], 4.1.3.2., 4.1.4., 9.4.3.1.
  - deflections under, 4.1.3.5., 9.4.3.
  - design requirement, 4.1.1.3.
  - in dining areas, 4.1.5.3., 4.1.5.6.
  - due to crane, 4.1.3.2., 4.1.5.11.
  - due to earthquakes, 4.1.3.2., 4.1.8.
  - due to ice, 4.1.6.15.
  - due to partitions, 4.1.4.1.
  - due to resonance, 4.1.3.6.
  - due to snow and rain, 4.1.6., 4.1.6.4., 9.4.2.2., 9.4.2.3.
  - due to sway forces, 4.1.5.10.
  - due to use and occupancy, 4.1.5.
  - during construction, 4.1.1.3.
  - eccentric, on foundations, 4.2.4.6.
  - environmental, 5.1.4.1., 5.2.1., 5.2.1.3.
  - on exterior areas, 4.1.5.5.

on firewalls, 4.1.5.17.  
 on floors, 4.1.5.3., 9.23.1.1., 9.23.4.1., 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.4.  
 on foundations, 4.2.4.1., 9.4.4.6.  
 full and partial, 4.1.5.3.  
 on grab bars, 3.7.2.8., 9.31.2.3.  
 on guards, 3.3.5.4., 4.1.5.14., 9.8.8.2., 9.8.8.4.  
 on handrails, 3.4.6.5., 4.1.5.14., 9.8.7.7.  
 and helipads, 4.1.5.13.  
 hydrostatic, 4.2.4.8., 9.13.3.1., 9.16.3.2.  
 impact of machinery and equipment, 4.1.5.11.  
 lateral (see Lateral loads)  
 limit states, 4.1.3.  
 live, 1.4.1.2.[A], 4.1.5.  
 with more than one occupancy, 4.1.5.7.  
 not specified, 4.1.2.2.  
 permanent, 4.1.3.2.  
 on ramps, 9.8.9.1.  
 on residential balconies, 4.1.5.3., 9.4.2.3.  
 on retaining walls, 9.4.4.5., 9.4.4.6.  
 specified, 4.1.2., 9.4.2.  
 on stairs, 9.8.9.1.  
 structural, 4.1., 9.4.  
 structural, on environmental separators, 5.1.4.1., 5.2.2.  
 and structural strength, 5.2.2.  
 variation with tributary area, 4.1.5.8.  
 on vehicle guardrails, 4.1.5.15.  
 vibration, 4.1.3.6.  
 on walls acting as guards, 4.1.5.16.  
 wind (see Wind load)  
 Lobbies, 3.4.4.2., 9.9.8.5., 9.10.17.3.  
 (see also Vestibules)  
 Locking devices  
   automatic, 3.3.4.5.  
   contained use area, 3.3.1.13.  
   electromagnetic, 3.3.1.13., 3.4.6.16., 3.4.6.18., 9.9.6.7.  
   impeded egress zone, 3.3.1.13.  
   principal entrances, 9.9.6.7.  
 Locks, deadbolt, 9.7.5.2.  
 Low buildings, wind loads, 4.1.7.5., 4.1.7.6.  
 Lowest exit level, 3.2.6.2., 3.4.3.2., 3.4.5.2., 9.9.11.4.  
 Low fire load, 3.2.2.89., 3.2.3.11.  
 Low-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 3)  
   building classification, 3.1.2.1.  
   definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]  
   fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.1., 9.10.18.  
   fire protection, 3.2.2.80. - 3.2.2.90., 3.2.3.11.  
   fire safety within floor areas, 3.3.1., 3.3.5.

occupant load, 3.1.17.1.

## Lumber

dimensions, 9.3.2.6.  
 fire stops, 3.1.11.7.  
 grades, 9.3.2.1., 9.3.2.2., 9.3.2.3.  
 for housing and small buildings, 9.3.2.  
 moisture content, 9.3.2.5.  
 protection from termites and decay, 9.3.2.9.  
 sheathing, 9.23.16.5.  
 structural uses, 9.3.2.9.  
 undersized, 9.3.2.8.

## M

Main entrances (see Principal entrances)

### Major occupancy

and building classification, 3.1.2.1., 9.10.2.  
 definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]  
 occupancy combination prohibitions, 3.1.3.2.

### Major occupancy and fire safety requirements

building area determination, 3.2.2.5.  
 exceptions, 3.2.2.8.  
 fire separations, 3.1.3.1.  
 multiple occupancies, 3.1.3., 3.2.2.4., 3.2.2.6., 9.10.2., 9.10.9.11., 9.10.9.16., 9.10.9.17.  
 superimposed occupancies, 3.2.2.7.

### Makeup air

and depressurization protection, 9.32.3.8.  
 fans, 9.32.3.10.  
 requirements, 6.3.2.8.  
 for subfloor depressurization, 9.13.4.3.

### Mansard roofs

fire stopping, 3.1.11.5.  
 sheathing, 9.23.17.6.  
 venting, 9.19.1.4.

Manual stations, fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.4., 3.2.4.16.

### Manufactured buildings,

application of code, 1.1.1.1.[A]  
 foundations, 9.12.2.2., 9.15.1.3.

Marquees, 3.1.5.24., 3.1.16.1., 3.2.2.3.

### Masonry

bonding, 9.20.9., 9.20.11.2.  
 chases and recesses, 9.20.7.  
 chimneys, 1.4.1.2.[A], 6.3.3.2., 9.21., 9.33.10.3.  
 cold weather requirements, 9.20.14.  
 columns, 9.17.5.  
 corbelling, 9.20.12.  
 dampproofing, 9.13.2.3.  
 earthquake reinforcement, 9.20.1.2., 9.20.15.

- exposure to weather, 9.20.2.6.
- flashing, 9.20.13., 9.26.4.4., 9.26.4.6.
- flues, 9.21.
- foundations, 4.2.3.3., 4.2.3.4., 9.15.1.1., 9.15.2., 9.15.4., 9.15.4.10.
- grout, 9.20.3.2.
- installation, 5.6.1.2., 9.15.2.2., 9.15.2.3., 9.20.
- joints, 9.20.4., 9.20.9.1.
- lateral support, 9.20.10.
- material standards, 5.6.1.2., 5.9.1.1., 9.15.2.2., 9.17.5.1.
- mortar, 9.20.3.1., 9.20.3.2.
- parapet walls, 9.20.6.5.
- for pilasters, 9.15.5.3.
- solid, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- structural design basis, 4.3.2.1.
- stucco on, 9.28.1.3.
- supporting beams, 9.15.5.2.
- supporting floor joists, 9.15.5.1.
- support of loads, 9.20.5., 9.20.8.
- as thermal barrier, 3.1.5.14., 3.1.5.15.
- ties, 9.20.9.5.
- tying, 9.20.9., 9.20.11.2.
- units, 1.4.1.2.[A], 9.20.2., 9.20.2.1.
- used brick, 9.20.2.2.
- veneer, 9.20.6.4., 9.20.8.5., 9.20.9.5., 9.20.12.3.
- walls, 9.20.
- weep holes, 5.6.2.1., 9.20.13.5., 9.20.13.6., 9.20.13.8.
- Mastics, 3.1.5.2.
- Materials
  - braced wall panels, 9.23.13.6.
  - characteristics, 1.2.2.1.[A]
  - cladding, hardboard, factory-finished, 9.27.9.1.
  - cladding, lumber, 9.27.6.1.
  - cladding, OSB and waferboard, 9.27.10.1.
  - cladding, plywood, 9.27.8.1.
  - cladding, strip steel, 9.27.11.1.
  - cladding, vinyl, 9.27.12.1.
  - columns, unit masonry, 9.17.5.1.
  - columns, wood, 9.17.4.2.
  - combustible, in noncombustible construction, 9.10.6.
  - concrete, 9.3.1.
  - dampproofing, 9.13.2.2.
  - design requirements, 4.3.
  - drainage tile and pipe, 9.14.3.1.
  - ducts, 6.3.2.3., 9.32.3.11., 9.33.6.2.
  - eave protection, 9.26.5.2.
  - exterior insulation finish systems, 9.27.13.
  - fibreboard, insulating, 9.29.8.1.
  - fire blocks, 9.10.16.3.
  - fire stops, 3.1.9.1., 3.1.11.7.
  - flashing, 9.20.13.1., 9.26.4.2., 9.27.3.7.
  - foundations, 4.2.3.
  - glass, 9.6.1.2.
  - granular, beneath floors, 9.16.2.
  - gypsum products, 9.29.5.2.
  - hardboard, 9.29.7.1.
  - for housing and small buildings, 9.30.
  - lumber and wood products, 9.3.2.
  - metal, 9.3.3.
  - particleboard finish, 9.29.9.1.
  - pipes for heating and cooling systems, 6.7.1.1., 9.33.8.1.
  - review of, 2.2.7.4.[C]
  - roofing, 9.26.2.1.
  - roof sheathing, 9.23.16.2.
  - sealants, 9.27.4.2.
  - shingles and shakes, 9.27.7.1.
  - standards, 1.5.[A], 5.9.1.1.
  - steel studs and runners, 9.24.1.2.
  - storage, 1.2.2.2.[A], 9.10.1.3.
  - subflooring, 9.23.15.2.
  - testing, 4.1.1.5.
  - thermal characteristics, 9.36.2.2.
  - underlay, panel-type, 9.30.2.2.
  - used, 1.2.2.3.[A]
  - waterproofing, 9.13.3.2., 9.29.2.2.
- Materials, appliances, systems and equipment
  - characteristics, 1.2.2.1.[A]
  - storage, 1.2.2.2.[A]
  - used, 1.2.2.3.[A]
- Means of egress
  - (see also Exits)
  - from air-supported structures, 3.1.6.1.
  - from care, treatment or detention occupancy, 3.3.3.3.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - dimensions, 9.9.3.
  - through doors and windows in dwelling units, 9.7.2.2.
  - from dwelling units, 3.3.4.4., 9.9.9.
  - exterior passageways as, 3.2.2.12.
  - and fire hose cabinets, 3.2.5.11.
  - within floor areas, 3.3.1.3.
  - from housing and small buildings, 9.9.
  - lighting of, 9.9.12.2.
  - obstructions in, 3.3.1.23., 3.4.3.3., 9.9.5., 9.9.5.5., 9.9.11.2.

- from outdoor places of assembly, 3.3.2.11.
  - from secondary suites, 9.9.9.
  - sliding doors in, 3.3.1.12.
  - from tents, 3.1.6.1.
  - transparent panels or doors in, 3.3.1.19., 9.6.1.4.
  - with two separate exits, 9.9.9.2.
- Measurement, rooms and spaces, 9.5.1.1.
- Mechanical systems and equipment (see Heating, ventilating and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems and equipment)
- Mechanical ventilation (see Ventilation)
- Medical gas piping, 3.7.3.1., 9.31.1.1.
- Medium-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 2)
- ammonium nitrate storage, 3.3.6.6.
  - building classification, 3.1.2.1.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.1., 9.10.18.
  - fire protection, 3.2.2.74. - 3.2.2.79.
  - fire safety within floor areas, 3.3.1., 3.3.5.
  - occupant load, 3.1.17.1.
- Mercantile occupancy (Group E)
- classification, 3.1.2.1., 9.10.2.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - exit stairs, 9.9.4.7.
  - exposing building face, 9.10.14.5.
  - fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.1., 9.10.18.
  - fire protection, 3.2.2.64. - 3.2.2.69.
  - fire-resistance rating, 9.10.8.
  - fire safety within floor areas, 3.3.1.
  - flame-spread rating, 9.10.17.
  - occupant load, 3.1.17.1.
  - security, 3.4.6.17.
- Metal
- cladding, 5.6.1., 5.9.1.1., 9.27.3.6., 9.27.5.6., 9.27.11.
  - for housing and small buildings, 9.3.3.
  - galvanized sheet, 9.3.3.2.
  - roof deck assembly, 3.1.14.2.
  - sheet thickness, 9.3.3.1.
  - siding, 5.6.1., 5.9.1.1., 9.27.3.6., 9.27.5.6., 9.27.11.
- Mezzanines
- application of requirements to exterior passageways, 3.2.2.12.
  - assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 1), 3.2.2.20.
  - assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 2), 3.2.2.23.
  - assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 3), 3.2.2.29.
  - and building height, 3.2.1.1., 9.10.4.1., 9.10.4.2.
  - business and personal services occupancy (Group D), 3.2.2.55.
  - care, treatment or detention occupancy (Group B, Division 1), 3.2.2.36., 3.2.2.37.
  - care, treatment or detention occupancy (Group B, Division 2), 3.2.2.38. - 3.2.2.41.
  - care, treatment or detention occupancy (Group B, Division 3), 3.2.2.42. - 3.2.2.46.
  - ceiling height, 9.5.3.2.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - fire-resistance rating, 9.10.8.6., 9.10.9.4.
  - fire separations, 3.2.1.6., 3.2.8.1., 9.10.12.1.
  - guards, 3.3.1.18., 9.8.8.1.
  - high-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 1), 3.2.2.70.
  - loads on floor or roof, 4.1.5.3., 4.1.5.4.
  - low-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 3), 3.2.2.80.
  - means of egress, 3.4.2.2., 9.9.8.6.
  - medium-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 2), 3.2.2.74.
  - mercantile occupancy (Group E), 3.2.2.64.
  - occupant load, 3.1.17.1.
  - openings in floor assemblies, 3.2.8.2.
  - residential occupancy (Group C), 3.2.2.47.
  - termination, 9.10.12.1.
- Micro-organisms, minimizing growth of, 6.3.1.6., 6.3.2.15.
- Mild climate indicator, 9.25.4.2., 9.25.5.1.
- Millwork, combustible, 3.1.5.9.
- Mirrors
- in exits, 9.9.5.6.
  - in washrooms, 3.8.3.15.
- Misters, 6.3.2.16.
- Mobile home parks, sanitary facilities, 3.7.2.4.
- Moisture
- diffusion, 5.1.1.1., 5.5.1.2.
  - flooring resistant to, 9.30.1.2.
  - protection against, application of Code, 9.13.1.1.
  - resistant backing for wall tile, 9.29.10.4.
  - transfer, 5.1.1.1., 5.2.1.3., 5.5.1.2.
- Moisture index, 9.27.2.2.
- Mortar
- aggregate for, 5.9.1.1., 9.20.3.1., 9.20.3.2., 9.29.10.2.
  - as base for ceramic wall tile, 9.29.10.2.
  - cold weather requirements, 9.20.14.
  - joints, 9.20.4.
  - material standards, 9.20.3.1.
  - mixes, 9.20.3.2.
  - standard for, 9.20.3.
  - uses, 9.20.3.2.

Movement, differential  
 columns, 9.17.2.2.  
 decks and other accessible platforms, 9.12.2.2.,  
 9.23.6.2.  
 elements in environmental separation, 5.1.4.1.,  
 5.2.2.1.  
 metal and vinyl cladding, 9.27.5.6.

Moving walks, 3.2.8.2., 3.8.2.3., 3.8.2.4., 9.8.1.4.

Multiple occupancies  
 and building classification, 9.10.2.  
 building size and construction requirements,  
 3.2.2.4.  
 fire separations, 3.1.3.  
 requirements decided by most restricted  
 occupancy, 3.2.2.6.  
 separation of repair garages, 9.10.9.17.  
 separation of residential occupancies, 9.10.9.11.  
 separation of storage garages, 9.10.9.16.

## N

### Nailing

bracing, 9.23.10.2.  
 built-up beams, 9.23.8.3.  
 cladding, 9.27.5., 9.27.7.3.  
 columns, 9.17.4.2.  
 fibreboard finish, 9.29.8.3.  
 framing, 9.23.3.4.  
 furring, 9.29.3.2.  
 gypsum board, 9.29.5.5., 9.29.5.8.  
 hardboard finish, 9.29.7.3.  
 joists, 9.23.9.2., 9.23.9.3., 9.23.14.9.  
 lintels, 9.23.12., 9.23.12.3.  
 OSB finish, 9.29.9.3.  
 particleboard finish, 9.29.9.3.  
 plywood finish, 9.29.6.3.  
 prevention of splitting, 9.23.3.3.  
 rafters, 9.23.14.4.  
 roofing, 9.26.2.3.  
 runners, 9.24.3.1.  
 shakes, 9.27.7.3.  
 sheathing, 9.23.3.5.  
 shingles, 9.26.7.4., 9.26.7.6., 9.26.8.5., 9.27.7.3.  
 siding, 9.27.5., 9.27.7.3.  
 stucco, 9.28.3.2.  
 subflooring, 9.23.3.5., 9.23.15.6.  
 underlay, 9.30.2.3.  
 waferboard finish, 9.29.9.3.  
 wall plates, 9.23.11.3.

wood-frame construction, 9.23.3.  
 wood shingles and shakes, 9.26.9.5., 9.26.10.4.  
 wood strip flooring, 9.30.3.3.

### Nailing and supporting elements

fire blocks required, 3.1.11.3.  
 in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.8.

### Nails

for cladding, 9.27.5., 9.27.5.4., 9.27.7.3.  
 diameters, 9.23.3.1.  
 dimensions, 9.23.3.5., 9.26.2.3., 9.27.5.4.  
 for fibreboard finish, 9.29.8.3.  
 for gypsum board, 9.29.5.6.  
 length, 9.23.3.2.  
 for OSB finish, 9.29.9.3.  
 for particleboard finish, 9.29.9.3.  
 for roofing, 9.23.3.5., 9.26.2.3.  
 for shingles, 9.26.7.4.  
 standard for, 9.23.3.1., 9.26.2.3., 9.29.5.6.  
 for underlay, 9.30.2.3.  
 for waferboard finish, 9.29.9.3.

Noise, protection from, 5.8., 9.32.3.10.

Noncombustible cladding, 3.2.3.7., 3.2.3.9.

### Noncombustible construction

assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 1),  
 3.2.2.20., 3.2.2.21.  
 assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 2),  
 3.2.2.23., 3.2.2.24.  
 assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 3),  
 3.2.2.29.  
 assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 4),  
 3.2.2.35.  
 business and personal services occupancy (Group  
 D), 3.2.2.55.  
 care, treatment or detention occupancy (Group B,  
 Division 1), 3.2.2.36., 3.2.2.37.  
 care, treatment or detention occupancy (Group B,  
 Division 2), 3.2.2.38. - 3.2.2.41.  
 care, treatment or detention occupancy (Group B,  
 Division 3), 3.2.2.42. - 3.2.2.46.  
 combustible elements, 3.1.5.6., 9.10.6.1.  
 combustible finishes in, 3.1.5.12.  
 combustible flooring in, 3.1.5.10.  
 combustible insulation in, 3.1.5.14.  
 combustible stairs in, 3.1.5.11.  
 decorative wood cladding, 3.1.5.24.  
 definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]  
 ducts (combustible) in, 3.1.5.18.  
 exposing building face, 3.2.3.7.  
 exterior walls, 3.1.5.5., 3.1.5.6.

factory-assembled panels, 3.1.5.7.  
 fire stops, 3.1.11.3.  
 firewalls, 3.1.10.1., 3.1.10.2.  
 flame-spread rating, 3.1.13.8.  
 glazing and skylights, 3.1.5.4.  
 high-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 1), 3.2.2.70., 3.2.2.71.  
 low-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 3), 3.2.2.80., 3.2.2.87.  
 materials permitted in, 3.1.5.1.  
 medium-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 2), 3.2.2.74., 3.2.2.75.  
 mercantile occupancy (Group E), 3.2.2.64.  
 metal roof decks, 3.1.14.2.  
 minor combustible components, 3.1.5.2.  
 nailing elements, 3.1.5.8.  
 non-metallic raceways in, 3.1.5.23.  
 partitions in, 3.1.5.16.  
 plumbing fixtures, 3.1.5.20.  
 residential occupancy (Group C), 3.2.2.47.  
 roofing materials, 3.1.5.3.  
 support of, 9.10.8.4.  
 vehicular passageways, 3.2.3.18.  
 walkways, 3.2.3.19., 3.2.3.20.  
 wires and cables, 3.1.5.21., 3.1.5.22.

Noncombustible materials  
 permitted in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.1.  
 return air ducts, 3.6.5.8.

Notching of framing members, 9.23.5.2.

Nursing homes, 3.1.8.13., 3.3.3.5., 3.4.1.6.

## O

### Objectives of the Code

application, 2.1.1.2.[A], 3.2.[A]  
 definition, 2.2.1.1.[A]

### Obstructions

in corridors, 3.3.1.9., 9.9.5.2., 9.9.5.3., 9.9.6.1.  
 in doorways, 9.9.6.1., 9.9.6.3.  
 in exits, 3.4.3.3., 9.9.5., 9.9.5.5., 9.9.6.1., 9.9.6.2.  
 in means of egress, 3.3.1.23., 9.9.5., 9.9.5.5.

### Occupancy

and building classification, 3.1.2.1., 9.10.2.  
 and building size determination, 1.3.3.4.[A]  
 combination prohibitions, 3.1.3.2., 9.10.9.12.  
 definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]  
 and live loads, 4.1.5.3.  
 multiple (see Multiple occupancies)

### Occupant load

and access to exits, 9.9.7.1.  
 definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]  
 and exit stairway, 3.4.3.1.  
 and fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.1.  
 fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.22.  
 fire safety requirements, 3.1.17.1.  
 and means of egress, 9.9.1.3.  
 and seating, 3.3.2.2.

Odour removal equipment, 6.8.1.3., 9.33.6.14.

Office areas, 4.1.5.3.

Oil-burning equipment, 6.2.1.5., 9.33.5.2.

Open-air storage garages, 9.10.18.8.

Open-air storey  
 access route, 3.2.5.4.  
 definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]  
 exposing building face, 9.10.14.4.  
 fire containment exception, 3.2.1.5., 3.2.2.80.  
 low-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 3), 3.2.2.90.  
 storage garages, 6.3.1.4.  
 unprotected openings, 3.2.3.10.

Openings  
 (see also Unprotected openings)  
 through barricades, 8.2.1.3.  
 in barrier-free path of travel, 3.8.3.2.  
 care, treatment or detention occupancy, 3.3.3.2.  
 for ducts, 6.3.2.9., 9.10.5.1., 9.33.6.10.  
 for escalators, 3.2.8.2.  
 in exposing building face, 9.10.14., 9.10.15.  
 in exterior walls, 3.2.3.13., 3.2.3.17., 9.10.12.3.  
 for fire dampers, 9.24.3.7.  
 fire protection, 9.10.1.3.  
 in fire separations, 3.1.8.1., 3.1.8.6., 3.2.3.13., 3.3.3.2., 3.4.4.4., 9.10.5., 9.10.9.3., 9.10.13., 9.10.13.8.  
 through floor assemblies, interconnected floor spaces, 3.2.8.  
 in garage floors, 3.3.5.4.  
 in guards, 9.8.8.5.  
 guards for, 3.3.1.18., 3.4.6.6.  
 in membrane ceilings, 3.1.9.6., 9.10.5.  
 for moving walks, 3.2.8.2.  
 for natural ventilation, 9.32.2.2.  
 near exterior exits, 9.9.4.4. - 9.9.4.6.  
 onto landings, 3.4.6.4.  
 in repair garages, 3.3.3.2.  
 for stairways, 3.2.8.2.  
 support of masonry above, 9.20.5.2.  
 in walls above adjoining roof, 9.10.12.2.  
 in walls exposed to adjoining roof, 3.2.3.15.

- Operating rooms, 3.3.3.6., 4.1.5.3.
- Oriented strand board (see OSB)
- Orphanages, 3.2.4.3.
- OSB
- as cladding, 5.9.1.1., 9.27.2.4., 9.27.3.6., 9.27.5., 9.27.10.
  - fire blocks, 9.10.16.3.
  - fire protection of soffits, 9.10.12.4.
  - fire stopping, 3.1.11.7.
  - as interior finish, 9.29.9.
  - material, 9.3.2.4.
  - material standard, 5.9.1.1., 9.23.15.2., 9.23.16.2., 9.23.17.2., 9.27.10.1., 9.29.9.1., 9.30.2.2.
  - as roof sheathing, 9.3.2.4., 9.23.3.5., 9.23.16.2.
  - as siding, 9.27.2.4., 9.27.3.6., 9.27.5., 9.27.10.
  - as subflooring, 9.3.2.4., 9.23.15.2., 9.23.15.5.
  - thickness, 9.3.2.7.
  - as underlay, 9.30.2.
  - as wall sheathing, 9.3.2.4., 9.23.3.5., 9.23.10.2., 9.23.13., 9.23.17.2., 9.23.17.5.
- Outdoor places of assembly, 3.3.2.11.
- Outdoor process equipment, 3.2.3.21.
- Outdoors
- air quality, 6.2.1.2., 6.3.2.14.
  - air supply rates, 6.3.1.1., 6.3.1.4.
  - design temperatures, 1.1.3.1., 5.2.1.1., 5.3.1.2., 5.5.1.2., 6.2.1.2., 9.33.3.2., 9.33.5.1.
- Outlet boxes, electrical
- combustible, in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.2.
  - penetrating fire separations, 3.1.9.2., 3.1.9.3., 3.1.9.4., 9.10.5.1., 9.10.9.6.
- Ovens, fire protection, 9.10.22.
- Owner, definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Oxidizing gases (see Combustible gases)
- ## P
- Paint
- in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.2.
  - on steel columns, 9.17.3.3., 9.23.8.2.
- Parapets
- design, 4.1.8.18., 5.6.2.2., 9.20.6.5.
  - firewalls as, 3.1.10.4.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.3.
- Parging
- of above-grade masonry, 9.20.13.9.
  - for dampproofing, 9.13.2.3., 9.13.2.4.
  - of foundation walls, 9.15.6.
  - for protection of insulation, 9.25.2.3.
  - for waterproofing, 9.13.3.3.
- Parking areas
- access, 3.8.2.5.
  - accessible path of travel, 3.8.2.5.
  - ventilation, 6.3.1.4.
- Parking decks on roofs, 4.1.5.5.
- Parking garages (see Storage garages)
- Parking structures, structural design basis, 4.4.2.1.
- Particleboard
- as interior finish, 9.29.9.
  - material standard, 9.23.15.2., 9.29.9.1., 9.30.2.2.
  - subflooring, 9.23.15.2.
  - thickness, 9.3.2.7.
  - underlay, 9.30.2.2.
- Partitions
- dead loads, 4.1.4.1.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - exceptions for mezzanines, 3.2.8.2.
  - in lieu of sliding doors, 3.3.1.12.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.16.
  - sliding glass, 3.3.1.19.
- Party walls
- airtightness, 9.36.2.10.
  - continuity of insulation, 9.36.2.5.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - fire separations, 9.10.9.
  - as firewalls, 3.2.3.4., 9.10.11.1.
  - not as firewalls, 9.10.11.2.
- Passageways
- as exits, 3.4.1.4.
  - as means of egress, 9.9.2.1.
  - vehicular, 3.2.3.18.
- Passageways, exterior
- as access to exit, 9.9.9.3.
  - exemptions, 3.4.4.3.
  - as exits, 3.3.1.15., 3.4.1.5.
  - fire-resistance rating, 9.10.8.8.
  - fire separations, 9.9.4.2.
  - flame-spread rating, 9.10.17.4.
  - interior finishes, 3.1.13.10.
  - as means of egress, 3.2.2.12.
- Passenger pickup areas, barrier-free, 3.8.3.1.
- Path of travel, accessible
- access to storeys served by escalators and moving walks, 3.8.2.3.
  - apartment buildings, 9.5.2.3.
  - application of Code, 3.8.2.1.
  - doors and doorways, 3.8.3.6.

- drinking fountains, 3.8.3.10.
  - elevators, 3.3.1.7., 3.8.2.3., 3.8.3.2., 3.8.3.7.
  - floor areas, 3.3.1.7., 9.5.2.2.
  - parking areas, 3.8.2.5.
  - signs, 3.8.2.4.
  - universal washrooms, 3.8.3.12.
  - walkways, 3.8.3.3.
  - wheelchair spaces, 3.8.2.3., 3.8.3.21.
  - width, 3.8.3.2.
- Patients' bedrooms, 3.3.3.5., 3.4.1.6., 4.1.5.3.
- Pedestrian traffic, construction sites, 8.2.3.1., 8.2.3.2.
- Penetrations in fire assemblies, 3.1.9.1.
- Penthouses, 3.6.1.1., 4.1.8.1.
- Perched groundwater, 1.4.1.2.[A], 4.2.5.5.
- Permafrost, 4.2.4.10., 9.15.1.2.
- Piers
- anchoring to, 9.20.11.6.
  - dimensions, 9.35.3.4.
- Pier-type foundations, 9.15.2.3.
- Pilasters, 9.15.5.3., 9.20.8.4.
- Pile foundations, 1.4.1.2.[A], 4.1.8.16., 4.2.3.8.
- Pipes
- clearances, 6.7.1.2., 9.33.8.3.
  - combustible (see Combustible piping)
  - corrosion protection, 9.31.2.2.
  - coverings, 3.6.5.5.
  - drainage, 9.14.3.
  - expansion and contraction, 6.7.1.1., 9.33.8.1.
  - for heating and cooling systems, 9.33.8.
  - insulation, 3.6.5.5., 6.5.1.1., 9.33.8.2., 9.33.8.4.
  - materials, 6.7.1.1., 9.14.3.1.
  - for medical gas, 3.7.3.1.
  - metal, 9.14.3., 9.31.2.2.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.18., 3.1.5.19.
  - penetrating fire separations, 3.1.9.2., 3.1.9.5., 9.10.9.6., 9.10.9.7.
  - plumbing, 9.31.2.2.
  - polypropylene, 3.1.5.19.
  - for service water heating systems, 9.36.4.4.
  - in shafts, 6.7.1.5.
  - sleeves for, 6.7.1.4., 9.33.8.4.
  - standards for drainage, 9.14.3.1.
  - support, 6.7.1.1., 9.33.8.1.
- Plans, specifications and calculations
- administration, 2.2.[C]
  - energy performance compliance, 2.2.8.[C]
  - environmental separation, 2.2.5.2.[C]
  - fire protection components, 2.2.3.[C]
  - foundations, 2.2.4.[C], 2.2.4.6.[C], 2.2.4.7.[C]
  - general information, 2.2.2.1.[C]
  - HVAC systems, 2.2.6.2.[C], 6.1.3.1.
  - site, 2.2.2.2.[C]
  - sprinkler systems, 2.2.3.2.[C]
  - structural, 2.2.4.[C], 4.1.1.4.
- Plastering, 9.29.4.
- Plaster, material standard, 9.29.4.1.
- Plates
- fastening of, 9.23.3.4.
  - sill, 9.23.7.
  - wall, 9.23.11.
- Platforms, serving as roofs, 9.26.1.1.
- Plenums
- in air duct systems, 3.6.5.1.
  - ceiling assemblies used as, 3.1.9.7.
  - ceilings used as, 3.6.4.3.
  - clearances, 3.6.5.6., 6.3.2.6., 9.33.6.8.
  - combustible, 9.33.6.2.
  - in combustible construction, 3.1.4.3.
  - connectors, 9.33.6.2.
  - construction, 6.3.2.3., 9.33.6.6.
  - coverings, 3.6.5.4., 9.33.6.4.
  - crawl spaces used as, 9.18.7.1.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - fittings, 6.3.2.3., 9.33.6.2.
  - furnace, 9.33.6.6., 9.33.6.7., 9.33.6.8.
  - insulation, 9.33.6.4.
  - linings, 3.6.5.4., 6.3.2.5., 9.33.6.4.
  - materials, 6.3.2.3., 9.33.6.2., 9.33.6.3.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.18.
  - return air, 3.6.4.3., 9.32.3.4.
- Plumbing
- accessible design, 3.8.2.8.
  - combustible piping, 9.10.9.7.
  - in dwelling units, 3.7.2., 9.31.
  - facilities required, 3.7.2., 3.8.2.8., 9.31.4.
  - fixtures, 3.1.5.20., 3.7.2., 9.31.4.
- Plumbing services, 7
- Plumbing systems
- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - design and installation, 7.1.2.1.
  - in dwelling units, 7.1.3.2.
  - facilities required, 7.1.3.
- Plywood
- as cladding, 5.9.1.1., 9.27.2.4., 9.27.3.6., 9.27.5., 9.27.8.
  - fastening, 9.29.6.3.
  - fire blocks, 9.10.16.3.
  - fire protection of soffits, 9.10.12.4.
  - fire stops, 3.1.11.7.



- grooved, 9.29.6.2.
  - as interior finish, 9.29.6.
  - lapped strips, 9.27.8.5.
  - material, 9.3.2.4.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1., 9.23.15.2., 9.23.16.2., 9.23.17.2., 9.27.8.1., 9.30.2.2.
  - as roof sheathing, 9.3.2.4., 9.23.3.5., 9.23.16.2., 9.23.16.6., 9.23.16.7.
  - as siding, 5.9.1.1., 9.27.8.
  - as subflooring, 9.23.3.5., 9.23.15.
  - thickness, 9.3.2.7., 9.29.6.1.
  - as underlay, 9.30.2.
  - as wall sheathing, 9.23.3.5., 9.23.10.2., 9.23.13., 9.23.17.2., 9.23.17.5.
- Police stations, 3.1.2.4.
- Pool heaters, 9.36.4.2.
- Portable fire extinguishers, 3.2.5.16., 9.10.20.4., 9.10.21.8.
- Post-disaster buildings
- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - earthquake load and effects, 4.1.8.1., 4.1.8.5., 4.1.8.10., 4.1.8.13., 4.1.8.14.
  - loads and effects, 4.1.2.1.
  - snow loads, 4.1.6.2.
  - structural loads, 5.2.2.1.
  - wind loads, 4.1.7.3.
- Potable water systems, 9.31.3.
- Power-operated doors, 3.8.2.7., 3.8.3.6.
- Precipitation
- ingress, 5.6.1.1., 5.6.2.1., 9.27.2.
  - protection from, 5.6.1.1., 5.6.2.1., 9.20.13., 9.26.
  - Pressure piping, 6.2.1.5., 9.33.5.2.
- Pressure vessels, 6.2.1.5., 9.33.5.2.
- Principal entrances
- accessible, 3.8.2.2.
  - access routes, 3.2.5.4., 3.2.5.5.
  - door requirements, 9.7.2.1.
  - as exits, 3.3.1.17., 3.4.2.6.
  - latching, locking and opening mechanisms, 9.9.6.7.
  - manual fire alarm stations, 3.2.4.16.
  - as means of egress, 9.9.2.4.
  - signs, 3.1.2.6.
- Private sewage disposal systems (see Sewage disposal systems, private)
- Process plants
- basements and pits, 3.3.6.9.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - volatile liquids, 3.3.6.9.
- Protected floor space, 1.4.1.2.[A], 3.2.8.5., 3.4.3.2.
- Protection from freezing
- (see also Frost action)
  - concrete, 9.3.1.9.
  - concrete stairs, 9.8.10.3.
  - excavations, 9.12.1.3.
  - fire hose stations, 9.10.21.9.
  - fire protection systems, 3.2.5.17., 9.10.20.5.
  - foundations, 9.12.1.3.
  - gypsum board, 9.29.5.10.
  - HVAC systems and equipment, 6.2.1.6., 9.33.4., 9.33.4.5.
  - masonry, 9.20.14.1.
  - stucco, 9.28.6.1.
- Protection from high temperature piping, 6.7.1.4., 9.33.8.4.
- Public areas
- (see also Corridors)
  - glass doors in, 3.3.1.19.
  - glass used in, 3.3.1.14., 9.6.1.4.
  - transparent panels used in, 3.3.1.19., 9.6.1.4., 9.7.5.
  - windows in, 3.3.1.19., 9.7.5.
- Public corridors
- (see also Corridors)
  - access to exit, 9.9.9.1., 9.9.9.3.
  - containing occupancy, 9.10.17.7.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - doors and door hardware, 3.3.1.13.
  - doors opening onto, 9.10.13.12.
  - emergency lighting, 3.2.7.3., 9.9.12.3.
  - exit signs, 3.4.5.2.
  - fire separations, 3.3.1.4.
  - flame-spread rating, 3.1.13.6., 9.10.17.2., 9.10.17.5.
  - lighting, 3.2.7.1., 9.9.12.2.
  - serving sprinklered buildings, 3.3.1.1.
  - smoke control measures, 3.2.6.2.
  - travel distance to exit, 3.4.2.5.
  - width, 3.3.1.9.
- Public thoroughfares, 3.2.3.9., 3.2.5.6., 9.10.20.3.
- Public ways
- combustible projections near, 3.2.3.6.
  - at construction sites, 8.2.1.1., 8.2.3.2., 8.2.3.5., 8.2.4.1.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Pyritic soil and rock
- drainage, 9.14.2.1., 9.14.4.1.
  - beneath floors-on-ground, 9.16.2.2.
  - and footings, 9.15.3.2.
  - foundations on, 9.4.4.4.
  - not in backfill, 9.12.3.3.

**R**

## Raceways

- collapse of, in firewalls, 3.1.10.1.
- in combustible construction, 3.1.4.4.
- in exit areas, 3.4.4.4.
- and fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.2.
- in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.21., 3.1.5.23.
- penetrating fire separations, 3.1.9.2., 9.10.9.6.
- in plenums, 3.6.4.3.

Radiation from interior fires, control, 3.2.3.1., 9.10.14., 9.10.15.

Radiators, 6.7.1.3., 9.33.7.1.

## Radon gas infiltration

- (see also Soil gas control)
- air barriers, 9.25.3.
- depressurization system, 9.32.3.8.
- and HVAC design, 6.2.1.1.
- required resistance to, 5.4.1.1.
- rough-in for subfloor depressurization system, 9.13.4.3.

## Rafters

- anchoring to masonry, 9.20.11.4.
- continuity, 9.23.14.1.
- deflection, 9.4.3.1.
- dimensions, 9.23.4.2., 9.23.14.6., 9.23.14.7.
- fastening, 9.23.3.4., 9.23.14.4.
- framing around openings, 9.23.14.2.
- hip and valley, 9.23.14.6.
- installation, 9.23.14.4.
- lumber grade, 9.3.2.1.
- nailing, 9.23.3.4., 9.23.14.4.
- ridge support, 9.23.14.8.
- shaping, 9.23.14.5.
- spans, 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.5., 9.23.14.7.
- support, 9.23.14.3., 9.23.14.7.
- in wood-frame construction, 9.23.14.

Rain loads, 4.1.6.4., 4.1.6.12., 9.4.2.2.

(see also Moisture index)

Rain penetration control, 5.6., 9.20.13., 9.26., 9.27.4.

## Ramps

- barrier-free, 3.8.2.2., 3.8.3.2., 3.8.3.5., 9.8.5.1.
- barrier-free floor areas, 3.3.1.7.
- basement, 3.4.5.2.
- at doors, 9.8.6.2., 9.9.4.4.
- for dwelling units, 9.8.1.
- as exits, 3.4.1.4., 9.8.1.3., 9.9.2.1.
- exit signs, 9.9.11.4.
- finishes, 9.8.9.6.

in garages, 9.8.8.4.

guards, 3.4.6.6., 3.8.3.5., 9.8.8.

handrails, 3.4.6.5., 3.8.3.5., 9.8.7., 9.8.7.1.

height, 9.8.5.5.

height over, 9.8.5.3.

for housing and small buildings, 9.8.5.

landings on, 3.4.6.3., 9.8.6.

loads, 9.8.9.1.

rise, 9.8.5.5.

safety requirements, 3.3.1.14.

for secondary suites, 9.8.1.

slip-resistance, 3.4.6.1., 9.8.9.6.

slope, 3.4.6.7., 3.8.3.5., 9.8.5.4.

width, 3.4.3.2., 9.8.5.2.

Ranges (see Stoves)

Receptacles, electrical, 9.34.1.1., 9.34.2.2.

Recessed lighting fixtures, 3.2.7.2., 9.34.1.4.

Recesses, 9.20.7.

Referenced documents, 1.3.1., 1.5.1.[A]

## Reference house

definition, 9.36.5.2.

[energy step code. 9.36.6.](#)

modeling of energy performance,  
9.36.5.13. - 9.36.5.16.

## Refrigerating systems and equipment

in housing and small buildings, 9.33.9.

installation, 6.2.1.5., 6.6.1.1., 9.33.5.2., 9.33.9.1.

## Refuse

bins, 3.6.3.3.

chutes, 3.6.3.3., 5.8.1.1., 9.10.1.3.

combustible, 9.10.10.6.

rooms, 3.6.2.5., 3.6.3.3.

## Registers and outlets

(see also Air outlets; Diffusers)

exhaust, 6.3.2.10., 9.32.3.13.

heating, 9.33.6.10., 9.33.6.11.

over pipeless furnaces, 9.33.6.8.

ventilation, 9.32.3.5., 9.32.3.6.

Reinforced concrete, 4.3.3.1., 9.3.1.1.

## Reinforcing

concrete block foundations, 9.20.15.2.

earthquakes, 9.20.1.2., 9.20.15.

glass block, 9.20.9.6.

insulating concrete form walls, 9.3.1.1., 9.15.4.5.,  
9.20.17.

masonry, 9.20.15.

stucco, 9.28.1.2., 9.28.4.5.

## Repair garages

definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]

- fire separation requirements, 9.10.9.17.
- in industrial occupancies, 3.3.5.4.
- separation from care, treatment or detention occupancies, 3.3.3.2.
- solid-fuel burning appliances prohibited in, 3.6.2.1.
- Residential care homes, 3.1.2.5., 9.10.2.2.
- Residential fire warning systems, 3.2.4.21., 9.10.19.8.
- Residential occupancy (Group C)
  - (see also Dwelling units; Secondary suites)
  - below ground level, 3.2.2.15.
  - classification, 3.1.2.1., 9.10.2.
  - convalescent and children's homes as, 3.1.2.5.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - door hold-open devices, 3.1.8.14.
  - emergency power for fire alarm systems, 3.2.7.8.
  - emergency power for lighting, 3.2.7.4.
  - fire access route design, 3.2.5.6.
  - fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.1., 3.2.4.11., 3.2.4.18., 9.10.18.
  - fire protection, 3.2.2.47. - 3.2.2.54.
  - fire-resistance rating, 9.10.8.
  - fire safety within floor areas, 3.3.1., 3.3.4.1.
  - fire separations, 9.10.9.11., 9.10.9.12., 9.10.9.14.
  - firewalls, 9.10.11.2.
  - flame-spread rating, 3.1.13.3., 9.10.17.
  - lighting requirements, 3.2.7.1.
  - location of smoke/fire dampers, 3.1.8.7.
  - occupant load, 3.1.17.1.
  - ramp slope maximum, 3.4.6.7.
  - smoke alarms, 3.2.4.20., 9.10.19.
  - smoke control measures, 3.2.6.2.
  - sprinkler piping, 3.2.5.13.
  - sprinkler systems, 3.2.5.12.
  - storage lockers, 3.1.5.17.
- Resilient flooring, 9.30.2.1., 9.30.5.
- Resistance to deterioration, 5.1.4.2., 9.20.16.1.
  - (see also Corrosion protection; Corrosion resistance; Decay, protection against)
- Resistance to forced entry
  - doors, 9.7.5.2.
  - windows, 9.7.5.3.
- Resistant design, earthquake load, 4.1.3.2.
- Restaurants, 3.2.4.1., 3.3.2.15., 6.3.1.7.
- Return air inlets, 9.33.6.12.
- Return air systems, 3.6.5.8., 6.3.2.11., 9.33.6.13.
  - (see also Air intakes; Ducts)
- Return ducts, 1.4.1.2.[A], 6.3.2.11., 9.33.6.13.
- Review of work, 2.2.7.[C]
- Revolving doors, 3.4.6.15., 9.9.6.4.
- Rim joists
  - airtightness, 9.36.2.10.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - effective thermal resistance, 9.36.2.6.
  - and exterior wall framing, 9.23.3.4.
- Risers
  - aisle steps, 3.3.2.5.
  - bleacher steps, 3.3.2.12.
  - curved flights, 3.3.1.16.
  - dimensions, 3.4.6.8., 9.8.4.1.
  - minimum number, 3.4.6.2., 9.8.3.2.
  - restaurant stairs, 3.3.2.15.
  - uniformity and tolerances, 3.4.6.8., 9.8.4.4.
- Rock
  - bearing pressure, 9.4.4.1., 9.4.4.2.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - foundations on, 9.12.2.2.
- Rock, pyritic
  - drainage, 9.14.2.1., 9.14.4.1.
  - beneath floors-on-ground, 9.16.2.2.
  - and footings, 9.15.3.2.
  - foundations on, 9.4.4.4.
  - not in backfill, 9.12.3.3.
- Roof aggregate, 9.26.11.1., 9.26.11.4.
- Roof arches (see Roof and ceiling framing)
- Roof assemblies
  - effective thermal resistance, 9.36.2.6.
  - fire-resistance rating, 3.1.7.5., 3.2.2.17., 3.2.2.25., 3.2.2.35., 3.2.2.49., 3.2.2.52., 3.2.2.56., 3.2.2.60., 3.2.2.66., 3.2.2.76., 3.2.2.81., 3.2.2.83.
  - non-contiguous, 3.1.15.2., 3.2.2.50., 3.2.2.58.
- Roof and ceiling framing
  - bearing on cavity walls, 9.20.8.2.
  - fire-resistance rating, 3.1.7.3.
  - in heavy timber construction, 3.1.4.7.
  - loads on, 9.4.2.2., 9.4.2.4.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.3.
  - sheathing, 9.3.2.4., 9.23.16.
  - trusses, 9.4.2.2., 9.23.5.5., 9.23.14.11.
  - in wood-frame construction, 9.23.14.
- Roof coverings, 3.1.15.1., 3.1.15.2., 9.26.
  - (see also Roofing)
- Roofing
  - (see also Roof covering)
  - asphalt shingles, 5.6.1.2., 5.9.1.1., 9.26.1.3., 9.26.2.1., 9.26.7., 9.26.8.
  - bituminous, 9.26.2.1.
  - built-up, 5.9.1.1., 9.26.11.
  - built-up materials, 9.26.2.1.

- cedar shingles and shakes, 9.26.2.1., 9.26.3.1., 9.26.10.
  - clay tile, 9.23.4.5.
  - concrete tile, 5.9.1.1., 9.23.4.5., 9.26.2.1., 9.26.17.
  - definition, 9.26.1.1.
  - elastomeric sheets, 5.9.1.1., 9.26.2.1.
  - fasteners, 9.26.2.3., 9.26.2.4.
  - flashing, 9.26.4.
  - glass-reinforced polyester, 9.26.14.
  - installation alternatives, 9.26.1.3.
  - installation of materials, 9.26.2.2.
  - installation standards, 5.6.1.2.
  - material standards, 9.26.2.1.
  - metal, 9.26.13.
  - nails, 9.26.2.3.
  - over wood-based sheathing, 9.26.11.8.
  - polyvinyl chloride sheets, 5.6.1.2., 5.9.1.1., 9.26.2.1., 9.26.16.
  - prefabricated bituminous membranes, 9.26.2.1.
  - prefabricated modified bituminous membranes, 5.9.1.1.
  - requirement for, 5.6.1.1., 9.26.1.2.
  - rubberized asphalt, 5.6.1.2., 9.26.2.1., 9.26.15.
  - selvage, 9.26.12.
  - slope of, 9.26.3.
  - standards for, 5.9.1.1.
  - staples, 9.26.2.4.
  - vegetative, 5.6.1.2.
  - wood shakes, 9.26.10.
  - wood shingles, 9.26.9.
- Roofs**
- access, 3.2.5.3.
  - acting as diaphragms, 4.1.8.15., 4.1.8.18.
  - anchorage of, 9.20.11.1., 9.20.11.4., 9.20.17.6.
  - appliances mounted on, 3.6.1.5., 6.4.1.2., 9.10.1.3.
  - arched or curved, snow loads, 4.1.6.10.
  - beams, 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.5.
  - considered as walls, 3.2.1.3., 9.10.1.1.
  - definition, 9.26.1.1.
  - deflection, 9.4.3.1.
  - drains, 5.6.2.2., 9.26.18.2.
  - egress from, 3.3.1.3., 9.9.7.1.
  - fire blocks, 9.10.16.1.
  - fire rating, 9.10.3.3.
  - fire-resistance rating, 9.10.8.1., 9.10.8.2., 9.10.8.7.
  - fire-retardant-treated wood, 3.1.14.1.
  - fire separations, 3.2.2.13.
  - firewall termination, 3.1.10.3.
  - framing, 9.23.4., 9.23.14.
  - framing around openings, 9.23.14.2.
  - gable, snow loads, 4.1.6.9.
  - guards, 3.3.1.18.
  - heavy timber construction, 3.1.4.7., 3.2.2.16.
  - helipad loads, 4.1.5.13.
  - insulation, 9.25.2.2.
  - joists, 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.5., 9.23.14.1., 9.23.14.7., 9.23.14.9.
  - loads due to use, 4.1.5., 9.4.2.4.
  - metal decking, 3.1.14.2.
  - multi-level, 4.1.6.5.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.3.
  - parapets, 3.1.5.3., 3.1.10.4., 4.1.8.18., 5.6.2.2., 9.20.6.5.
  - rain loads, 4.1.6.4., 5.6.2.2., 9.4.2.2.
  - ridge support, 9.23.14.8.
  - sheathing installation, 9.23.16.3., 9.23.16.4., 9.23.16.6.
  - sheathing materials, 9.3.2.1., 9.3.2.4., 9.23.16.2., 9.23.16.5., 9.23.16.7.
  - sloped, 4.1.6.12., 9.10.1.1.
  - snow loads, 4.1.6.2., 4.1.6.3., 4.1.6.5., 4.1.6.7., 4.1.6.8., 4.1.6.11., 4.1.6.12., 9.4.2.2.
  - sprinklers in lieu of structural fire resistance, 9.10.8.2.
  - supporting an occupancy, 3.2.2.13., 9.10.8.7.
  - trusses, 9.4.2.2., 9.23.5.5., 9.23.14.11.
  - of underground structures, 9.13.1.1., 9.13.3., 9.25.3.5.
  - venting, 9.19.1.
  - wind loads, 4.1.7.6., 5.2.2.2.
- Roof spaces (see Attics or roof spaces)**
- Roof-top**
- air-handling equipment, 6.3.2.17.
  - appliances, 3.6.1.5., 3.6.2.1., 6.4.1.2., 9.10.1.3.
  - enclosures, 3.2.1.1., 3.2.2.14., 9.10.4.4.
- Rooms, height, 3.7.1.1., 9.5.3.**
- Runners, sheet steel framing**
- fastening, 9.24.3.1.
  - in fire-rated walls, 9.24.3.2.
  - installation, 9.24.3.1.
  - metal thickness, 9.24.1.3., 9.24.2.3., 9.24.2.4.
  - at openings, 9.24.2.4.
- Runs, stairs**
- aisle steps, 3.3.2.5.
  - bleacher steps, 3.3.2.12.
  - curved flights, 3.3.1.16.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - landing dimensions, 3.4.6.4.
  - minimum, 3.4.6.8.

rectangular treads, 9.8.4.2.  
 tapered treads, 3.3.1.16., 3.4.6.9., 9.8.4.3.  
 uniformity and tolerances, 9.8.4.4., 9.8.4.5.

## S

### Safety glass

in guards, 9.8.8.7.  
 on revolving doors, 3.4.6.15.  
 standards for, 9.6.1.2.  
 transparent panels and doors, 3.3.1.19., 3.4.1.8.  
 uses, 9.6.1.4.  
 washrooms, 3.7.2.5.

### Safety of public, construction and demolition sites, 8.2.

### Sanitary drainage systems, 1.4.1.2.[A], 9.31., 9.31.2.1., 9.31.5.

### Sawtooth roofs, wind loads, 4.1.7.6.

### Scaffolding, 4.1.1.3.

### Screens

in exhaust outlets, 6.3.2.9., 9.32.3.13.  
 in intake openings, 6.3.2.9., 9.32.3.13.  
 in natural ventilation openings, 9.32.2.2.

### Screw installation

gypsum board, 9.29.5.9.  
 sheet steel framing, 9.24.1.5., 9.24.3.1.

### Screws

dimensions, 9.23.3.5.  
 fastening to steel studs, 9.24.1.4.  
 for gypsum board, 9.29.5.5., 9.29.5.7.  
 sheathing, 9.23.3.5.  
 standard for, 9.23.3.1., 9.24.1.4., 9.29.5.7.  
 subflooring, 9.23.3.5.  
 wood-frame construction, 9.23.3.5.

### Sealants

cladding, 9.27.4., 9.27.8.4., 9.27.9.3., 9.27.9.4., 9.27.10.3.  
 material properties, 9.27.4.2.  
 material standards, 9.27.4.2.  
 in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.2.  
 siding, 9.27.4., 9.27.8.4., 9.27.9.3., 9.27.9.4., 9.27.10.3.  
 windows, doors and skylights, 9.7.6.2.

### Sealing

(see also Air barrier systems; Soil gas control; Waterproofing)  
 against precipitation, 5.6.2., 9.27.4.  
 against soil gas, 9.25.3.6.  
 air barrier systems, 5.4.1.2., 9.10.9.16., 9.10.9.17., 9.25.3.3.

at chimneys, 9.21.5.2., 9.25.3.3.  
 ducts, 3.6.5.3., 6.3.2.19., 9.32.3.11., 9.33.6.3., 9.33.6.7.  
 floors-on-ground, 9.25.3.6.  
 at gas vents, 9.25.3.3.  
 ground cover, 9.18.6.2.  
 sill plates, 9.23.7.2.  
 windows, doors and skylights, 9.7.6., 9.20.13.11., 9.27.4.

### Seasonally and intermittently occupied buildings

application of Part 9, 9.1.1.1.  
 ventilation, 6.3.1.3.

### Seating

aisle width, 3.3.2.1.  
 not fixed, 3.3.2.2.  
 occupant load, 3.3.2.2., 4.1.5.10.  
 in showers, 3.8.3.16.  
 wheelchair space, 3.8.2.3., 3.8.3.21.

### Secondary suites, 9.37.

### Seismic data, 1.1.3.

### Seismic isolation

definitions and analysis, 4.1.8.19.  
 design provisions, 4.1.8.20.

### Seismic loads (see Earthquake design)

### Self-closing devices, 3.1.8.13., 3.4.6.13., 9.9.6.7., 9.10.13.10., 9.10.13.15.

### Self-contained emergency lighting, 3.2.7.4., 9.9.12.3.

### Self-service storage buildings, 3.9.

### Self-storage warehouses, 3.3.5.9., 9.9.6.4.

### Septic disposal beds, 9.14.6.2.

### Service lines under buildings, 3.2.3.21.

### Service rooms

access to exit, 9.9.7.5.  
 application of Code, 3.6.1.1.  
 and building height, 9.10.4.4.  
 carbon monoxide alarms, 9.32.3.9.  
 construction supporting, 9.10.8.5.  
 definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]  
 doors, 9.10.13.12.  
 doors and door hardware, 3.3.1.13., 3.4.6.11.  
 emergency lighting, 3.2.7.3.  
 exits, 3.4.4.4., 3.6.2.2.  
 fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.2.  
 fire detectors, 3.2.4.10.  
 fire resistance of supporting construction, 3.1.7.5.  
 fire separations, 3.6.2.1., 9.10.10.3.  
 heat and smoke detectors, 9.10.18.4.  
 for housing and small buildings, 9.10.10.  
 loads on floor or roof, 4.1.5.3.  
 opening into exit, 9.9.5.9.

- ramps and stairways, 3.3.1.14.
- roof-top, 3.2.1.1., 3.2.2.14., 9.10.4.4.
- service equipment in, 3.6.2.3.
- under exits, 9.9.5.8.
- Service spaces
  - and building height, 3.2.1.1.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - egress, 3.3.1.24.
  - emergency lighting, 3.2.7.3.
  - exits, 3.4.4.4.
  - fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.18.
  - horizontal (see Horizontal service spaces)
  - lightning protection systems, 3.6.1.3.
  - means of egress, 3.3.1.3.
  - protection of electrical conductors, 3.2.7.10.
  - ramps and stairways, 3.3.1.14.
  - signage, 3.3.1.24.
  - sprinkler systems, 3.2.5.14.
  - storage use prohibition, 3.6.1.4.
  - travel distance to exit, 3.4.2.4.
  - vertical (see Vertical service spaces)
- Service water heaters
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - in housing and small buildings, 9.31.6.
  - indirect, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - protection from corrosion, 9.31.6.3.
  - steel, 9.31.6.3.
  - storage type, 1.4.1.2.[A], 9.31.6.2., 9.31.6.3.
- Service water heating systems
  - energy efficiency, 9.36., 9.36.4.
  - energy performance calculations, 9.36.5.8.
  - energy performance modeling, 9.36.5.12., 9.36.5.16.
  - equipment efficiency, 9.36.4.2.
  - temperature controls, 9.36.4.5.
- Sewage disposal, 9.14.5., 9.31.2.1., 9.31.5.
- Sewage disposal systems, private, 1.4.1.2.[A], 9.31.2.1., 9.31.5.2.
- Shafts
  - installation, 6.7.1.5.
  - opening into an interconnected floor space, 3.2.8.4.
  - pipng in, 6.7.1.5.
  - service, 9.10.1.3.
- Shakes, wood
  - cladding, 9.27.7.
  - dimensions, 9.27.7.2., 9.27.7.6.
  - eave protection, 9.26.5.1., 9.26.10.7.
  - flashing, 9.26.10.6.
  - grades, 9.26.10.8., 9.27.7.1.
  - installation, 9.27.5., 9.27.7.3.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1., 9.26.2.1., 9.27.7.1.
  - roofing, 9.26.10.
  - spacing and joints, 9.26.10.3.
  - underlay, 9.26.10.2.
- Shallow foundations
  - damaged, 4.2.6.4.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - design, 4.2.6.1.
  - footing design, 9.4.4.1.
  - incorrect placement, 4.2.6.3.
  - support, 4.2.6.2.
- Sheathing
  - (see also Subflooring)
  - for braced wall panels, 9.23.13.6.
  - for bracing and lateral support, 9.23.10.2.
  - in exposing building face, 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.2.
  - fastening, 9.23.3.5.
  - fibreboard as, 9.23.16.7.
  - installation, 9.23.3.5., 9.23.16.3., 9.23.16.4., 9.23.17.4., 9.23.17.5.
  - insulating, 9.20.13.6., 9.27.3.4.
  - low permeance, 9.25.5.1.
  - lumber as, 9.3.2.1., 9.23.16.5., 9.23.17.2., 9.23.17.4.
  - material standards, 9.23.16.2., 9.23.17.2., 9.26.2.1.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.3.
  - OSB as, 9.3.2.4., 9.23.16.2., 9.23.17.2.
  - plywood as, 9.3.2.4., 9.23.16.2., 9.23.17.2.
  - roofs, 9.3.2.1., 9.3.2.4., 9.23.16., 9.26.2.1.
  - on steel studs, 9.24.1.5.
  - beneath stucco, 9.28.1.1., 9.28.4.2.
  - support, 9.23.10.5., 9.24.3.4.
  - thickness, 9.23.16.7., 9.23.17.2.
  - waferboard as, 9.3.2.4., 9.23.16.2., 9.23.17.2.
  - walls, 9.3.2.1., 9.3.2.4., 9.23.17.
- Sheathing membranes
  - installation, 9.27.3.3. - 9.27.3.6.
  - insulation, 9.27.3.5.
  - interior of masonry walls, 9.20.13.9.
  - mansard roofs, 9.23.17.6.
  - material standard, 9.27.3.2.
  - for precipitation protection, 9.27.3.1. - 9.27.3.6.
- Sheathing paper (see Sheathing membranes)
- Shingles, asphalt
  - eave protection, 9.26.5.1., 9.26.7.7.
  - flashing, 9.26.4.
  - installation, 9.26.1.3., 9.26.7., 9.26.8.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1., 9.26.2.1.
  - nails, 9.26.2.3.
  - slope, 9.26.3.1.

- staples, 9.26.2.4.
- underlay, 9.26.6.
- Shingles, wood
  - cladding, 9.27.7.
  - dimensions, 9.26.9.3., 9.27.7.2., 9.27.7.6.
  - eave protection, 9.26.9.8.
  - exposure, 9.26.9.6.
  - flashing, 9.26.9.7.
  - grade, 9.26.9.2., 9.27.7.1.
  - installation, 9.26.9.4., 9.27.2.4., 9.27.5., 9.27.7.3.
  - materials, 9.27.7.1.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1., 9.26.2.1., 9.27.7.1.
  - roofing, 9.26.9.
- Shop drawings, 2.2.7.3.[C]
- Showers, 3.8.3.16.
- Sidelights, 3.3.1.19., 9.6.1.4., 9.7.1.1., 9.7.2.1., 9.9.4.3.
- Sidewalks, 4.1.5.3., 8.2.1.2., 8.2.3.1.
- Siding (see Cladding)
- Signs
  - accessibility, 3.8.2.4., 3.8.2.10., 3.8.3.9.
  - construction sites, 8.2.3.3., 8.2.3.5., 8.2.4.1.
  - directing traffic, 8.2.4.3.
  - egress points, 3.3.1.24.
  - emergency crossover access to floor areas, 3.4.6.18.
  - exit obstruction prevention, 3.4.6.11., 9.9.11.2.
  - exits, 3.4.5.1., 9.9.11., 9.9.11.3.
  - floor numbers, 3.4.6.19., 3.5.4.2., 9.9.11.5.
  - graphical symbols, 3.4.5.2.
  - occupant load, 3.1.17.1.
  - stairs and ramps, 9.9.11.4.
- Silencing devices, 3.2.4.18., 3.2.4.20., 3.2.4.22., 3.2.6.7.
- Sill plates
  - dimensions, 9.23.7.1.
  - leveling, 9.23.7.2.
  - sealing, 9.23.7.2.
  - standard for, 9.23.7.
- Site plans, 2.2.2.2.[C]
- Site stability, earthquake design, 4.1.8.17.
- Skylights
  - airtightness, 9.36.2.9., 9.36.2.10.
  - area, 9.10.17.9.
  - in area calculations, 9.10.17.6.
  - combustible, in corridors, 3.1.13.5.
  - flame-spread rating, 3.1.13.2., 9.10.17.1.
  - glass standards, 9.6.1.3.
  - in housing and small buildings, 9.7.
  - installation, 9.7.6.
  - manufactured and pre-assembled, 9.7.4.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.4.
  - performance expectations, 9.7.3.
  - requirements, 9.7.2.2.
  - on roof adjacent to wall with windows, 3.2.3.15.
  - site-built, 9.7.5.
  - standards for, 5.4.1.2., 5.9.2.1., 5.9.2.2., 9.7.4.
  - thermal characteristics, 9.7.3.3., 9.36.2.7.
  - in unsprinklered compartments, 9.10.12.2.
- Slabs-on-ground
  - (see also Floors-on-ground)
  - bond break, 9.16.4.4.
  - concrete, 9.16.4.
  - ducts in or beneath, 9.33.6.7.
  - finishing, 9.16.4.1., 9.16.4.2.
  - insulation, 9.25.2.3.
  - thickness, 9.16.4.3.
- Sleepers, 9.30.1.3.
- Slide escapes, 3.4.1.6.
- Sliding doors
  - accessible, 3.8.3.6.
  - exits, 3.4.6.14.
  - glass used in, 9.6.1.4.
  - as means of egress, 3.3.1.12., 9.9.6.4.
  - performance expectations, 9.7.3.1., 9.7.3.2.
  - standards for, 5.3.1.2., 5.4.1.2., 9.7.4.2.
- Slip-resistance
  - accessible path of travel, 3.8.3.2.
  - bathtubs, 3.8.3.17.
  - exterior walks, 3.8.3.3.
  - ramps and stairways, 3.3.1.14., 3.4.6.1.
  - showers, 3.8.3.16.
  - treads and landings, 9.8.9.6.
- Smoke
  - circulation prevention, 3.2.4.12., 9.10.18.5.
  - contamination, 3.2.6.2., 3.2.8.4.
  - control of, 3.1.8.14., 3.2.6.1., 3.2.6.9., 3.3.1.7., 3.3.3.5., 3.3.3.7.
- Smoke alarms
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - in housing and small buildings, 9.10.19.
  - interconnection, 9.10.19.5.
  - location, 9.10.19.3.
  - maintenance and care instructions, 9.10.19.7.
  - power supply, 9.10.19.4.
  - requirements, 3.2.4.20., 9.10.19.1.
  - silencing, 9.10.19.6.
  - smoke detectors in lieu of, 3.2.4.20., 3.2.4.21.
  - sound patterns, 9.10.19.2.
- Smoke barrier doors, 3.2.3.20.
- Smoke barriers, 9.10.9.2., 9.10.9.15.

## Smoke chambers

- clearances, 9.22.9.3.
- slope, 9.22.7.1.
- standard for, 9.22.7.
- wall thickness, 9.22.7.2.

## Smoke dampers

- access, 3.1.8.11.
- as closures, 3.1.8.5.
- in fire separations, 3.1.8.7.
- installation, 3.1.8.11.
- leakage rates, 3.1.8.4.
- waived, 3.1.8.9.

## Smoke detectors

- in air-handling systems, 6.9.2.2., 9.10.18.5.
- annunciators, 3.2.4.8.
- for construction camps, 9.10.21.7.
- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- design and installation, 9.10.18.3.
- duct-type, 3.2.4.12.
- in electrical equipment rooms, 3.6.2.7.
- in elevators, 3.2.4.11., 3.2.4.14.
- in fire alarm systems, 9.10.18.
- in lieu of smoke alarms, 3.2.4.20., 3.2.4.21., 9.10.19.8.
- and release of hold-open devices, 3.1.8.14.
- requirements, 3.2.4.11., 9.10.18.4.

## Smoke developed classification

- duct requirements, 3.6.5.1.
- high buildings, 3.1.13.7.
- plenum requirements, 3.6.4.3.
- tests, 3.1.12.1.

## Smoke shafts (venting to aid firefighting), 3.2.6.6.

## Smoke stacks (venting for chimneys), 6.3.3.3.

## Snow accumulation, 4.1.6.2., 4.1.6.3., 4.1.6.7., 4.1.6.10., 5.6.2.2.

## Snow loads

- arch roofs, 4.1.6.10.
- areas adjacent to roof projections, 4.1.6.7.
- basic load factors, 4.1.6.2.
- curved roofs, 4.1.6.10.
- domes, 4.1.6.10.
- due to sliding, 4.1.6.11.
- exterior platforms, 9.4.2.3.
- full and partial, 4.1.6.3.
- gable roofs, 4.1.6.9.
- and gap between roof and higher roof, 4.1.6.6.
- multi-level roofs, 4.1.6.5.
- snow drift at roof corners, 4.1.6.8., 4.1.6.13.
- specified, 4.1.6.2., 9.4.2.2.
- and structural design, 4.1.6.

valleys in curved or sloped roofs, 4.1.6.12.

weight calculations for drifts, 4.1.6.13.

## Snow removal, 4.1.6.14.

## Soffits

- projections, 3.2.3.6., 9.10.14., 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15., 9.10.15.4., 9.10.15.5.
- protection of, 3.2.3.16., 9.10.12.4.
- venting, 9.19.1.2., 9.19.1.3., 9.25.2.4.

## Soil gas control

- application of Code, 9.13.1.1.
- crawl spaces, 9.13.4.2.
- floors-on-ground, 9.16.2.1., 9.25.3.6.
- requirements, 5.4.1.1., 9.13.4., 9.13.4.2.
- walls in contact with the ground, 9.25.3.4.

## Soil, pyritic

- drainage, 9.14.2.1., 9.14.4.1.
- beneath floors-on-ground, 9.16.2.2.
- and footings, 9.15.3.2.
- foundations on, 9.4.4.4.
- not in backfill, 9.12.3.3.

## Soils

- bearing pressure, 9.4.4.1., 9.4.4.2.
- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- erosion control, 5.6.2.2.
- excavations, 4.2.5., 9.12.
- beneath footings and foundations, 9.12.4.1., 9.15.1.1., 9.15.3.2.
- identification and classification, 4.2.4.3., 9.4.4.
- subsurface investigation, 4.2.2.1., 4.2.4.1., 4.2.4.2.
- swelling and shrinking, 4.2.4.11., 9.4.4.4., 9.12.3.3., 9.14.2.1., 9.14.4.1., 9.15.3.2., 9.16.2.2.
- temperature, 5.2.1.1., 5.2.1.3., 9.12.2.2., 9.16.2.2.

## Solar domestic hot water systems, 9.36.4.3.

## Solar thermal systems, 9.36.3.11.

## Solid-fuel-burning appliances

- carbon monoxide alarms, 6.9.3.1., 9.32.3.9.
- design, 9.33.5.3.
- fireplace inserts and hearth-mounted stoves, 9.22.10.
- and fire separations, 3.6.2.1.
- installation standard, 6.2.1.5., 9.22.10.2., 9.33.5.3.

## Solid masonry, 1.4.1.2.[A]

## Solid masonry units, 1.4.1.2.[A], 9.15.5.1.

## Sound

- protection from, 3.3.4.6., 5.1.1.1., 5.8.1., 9.11.
- rating for fans, 9.32.3.10.
- smoke alarms, 9.10.19.3.

## Sound transmission class (STC)

- calculation of, 5.8.1.2.
- compliance, 5.8.1.3.



- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Space heaters
  - (see also Heating appliances)
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - design and standards, 9.33.5.3.
  - performance requirements, 9.36.3.10.
- Space heating appliances
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - installation standards, 9.33.5.2.
- Spans
  - maximums, 9.23.4.
  - steel, 9.23.4.3.
  - wood, 9.23.4.1., 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.4., 9.23.4.5.
- Spatial separation between buildings, 3.2.3., 9.10.14., 9.10.21.5.
- Spatial separation between houses, 3.2.3.
- Special structures, 3.2.2.2.
- Sprinklered buildings or spaces
  - egress from bedrooms, 9.9.10.1.
  - fire-resistance rating, 9.10.8.2., 9.10.9.15., 9.10.10.6.
  - fire separations, 3.3.1.4., 3.6.2.5., 9.10.9.6., 9.10.9.13., 9.10.9.15., 9.10.10.6.
  - heat and smoke detection, 9.10.18.4.
  - limiting distance, 9.10.14.3.
  - lobbies, 3.4.4.2., 9.9.8.5.
  - openings in exposing building faces, 3.2.3.1., 9.10.14.4., 9.10.15.4.
  - openings in fire separations, 9.10.13.8.
  - and safety within floor areas, 3.3.
  - service spaces, 3.6.
  - soffit protection, 9.10.12.4.
  - and travel distance, 3.4.2.4., 3.4.2.5., 9.9.8.1., 9.9.8.2., 9.9.8.6.
- Sprinklered, definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- Sprinkler systems
  - for arena-type buildings, 3.1.2.3.
  - for assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 1), 3.2.2.20.
  - for assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 2), 3.2.2.23., 3.2.2.24., 3.2.2.26., 3.2.2.27.
  - for assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 3), 3.2.2.29., 3.2.2.31., 3.2.2.33.
  - for assembly occupancy (Group A, Division 4), 3.2.2.35.
  - for barrier-free floor areas, 3.3.1.7.
  - for basements, 3.2.1.5.
  - for business and personal services occupancy (Group D), 3.2.2.55., 3.2.2.57., 3.2.2.58., 3.2.2.59., 3.2.2.61., 3.2.2.63.
  - for care, treatment or detention occupancy (Group B, Division 1), 3.2.2.36., 3.2.2.37.
  - for care, treatment or detention occupancy (Group B, Division 2), 3.2.2.38. - 3.2.2.41.
  - for care, treatment or detention occupancy (Group B, Division 3), 3.2.2.42. - 3.2.2.46.
  - combustible pipes in, 3.1.9.5., 3.2.5.13., 9.10.9.6.
  - construction of, 3.2.5.12.
  - for contained use areas, 3.3.3.7.
  - and controlled egress, 3.4.6.17.
  - for corridors, 3.1.13.6., 3.3.2.6.
  - design, 3.2.5.12.
  - and door hold-open devices, 3.1.8.14.
  - and egress doorways, 3.3.1.5.
  - electrical supervision, 3.2.4.9.
  - exceptions for mezzanines, 3.2.8.2.
  - for exposing building face, 3.2.3.2.
  - and fire alarm systems, 3.2.4.1., 3.2.4.7., 3.2.4.8., 9.10.18.4.
  - fire department connection, 3.2.5.15.
  - and firefighting access, 3.2.5.1.
  - fire hose connections, 3.2.5.10.
  - fire hose stations, 3.2.5.11.
  - fire separations in residential occupancy, 3.3.4.2.
  - flame-spread rating, 3.1.13.8.
  - for garages, 3.2.1.2., 3.3.5.4., 3.3.5.7.
  - in heavy timber construction, 3.1.4.7., 3.2.2.16.
  - for high buildings, 3.1.13.7.
  - for high-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 1), 3.2.2.70.
  - for impeded egress areas, 3.2.2.19.
  - installation, 3.2.5.12., 9.10.1.3.
  - for interconnected floor space, 3.2.8.3.
  - for libraries, 3.3.2.13.
  - in lieu of fire detectors, 3.2.4.10.
  - limiting distance, 3.2.3.1.
  - for low-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F, Division 3), 3.2.2.80., 3.2.2.82., 3.2.2.84., 3.2.2.86., 3.2.2.88.
  - for medium-hazard industrial occupancy (Group F Division 2), 3.2.2.74., 3.2.2.75., 3.2.2.77., 3.2.2.79.
  - for mercantile occupancy (Group E), 3.2.2.64., 3.2.2.65., 3.2.2.67., 3.2.2.69.
  - and metal roof deck, 3.1.14.2.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.19.
  - plans, 2.2.3.2.[C]
  - for repair garages, 3.3.5.4.
  - required, 3.2.2.18.

- for residential occupancy (Group C), 3.2.2.47., 3.2.2.48., 3.2.2.50., 3.2.2.51., 3.2.2.54.
  - self-storage warehouses, 3.3.5.9.
  - and separation of public corridors, 3.3.1.4.
  - and separation of suites, 3.3.1.1.
  - and service penetrations, 3.1.9.5.
  - for service spaces, 3.2.5.14.
  - and soffit protection, 3.2.3.16.
  - stages, 3.3.2.14.
  - and standpipes, 3.2.5.8., 3.2.5.9.
  - for storage garages, 3.2.1.2., 3.3.5.4., 3.3.5.7.
  - for storage rooms, 3.3.4.3.
  - for storeys below ground, 3.2.2.15.
  - system monitoring, 3.2.4.15.
  - testing, 3.2.5.12.
  - for theatres, 3.3.2.14.
  - for underground walkways, 3.2.3.20.
  - and unprotected openings, 3.2.3.1., 3.2.3.12., 3.2.3.14., 3.2.3.15., 3.2.3.17.
- Stability, structural, 4.1.3.2.
- Stages, theatrical, 1.4.1.2.[A], 3.3.1.18., 3.3.2.14.
- Stairs
- cantilevered, 9.8.9.2., 9.8.10.
  - clear height over, 9.8.2.2.
  - concrete, 9.8.9.2., 9.8.10.
  - construction, 9.8.9.
  - curved, 3.3.1.16., 3.4.6.5., 3.4.6.9., 9.8.3.1.
  - dimensions, 3.3.2.15., 9.8.2.
  - doors onto, 3.4.6.3., 3.4.6.11., 9.8.6.2., 9.9.4.4., 9.9.6.6.
  - in dwelling units, 3.3.4.7., 9.8.
  - for exits, 9.8.1.3., 9.8.2.1., 9.8.3.1., 9.9.9.3.
  - exit signs with, 9.9.11.4.
  - exterior, 9.3.1.6., 9.8.9.2., 9.8.9.3.
  - finishes, 3.4.6.1., 9.8.9.6.
  - fire blocks required, 3.1.11.4., 9.10.16.1.
  - on fire escapes, 3.4.7.5.
  - with foundations, 9.12.2.2.
  - guards for, 9.8.8.
  - handrails, 3.4.6.5., 9.8.7., 9.8.7.1.
  - height of, 9.8.3.3.
  - horizontal exit prohibition, 3.4.6.10.
  - landings (see Landings)
  - loads on, 9.8.9.1.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.11.
  - nosings, 9.8.4.8.
  - permitted configurations, 9.8.3.1.
  - in restaurants, 3.3.2.15.
  - rise, 3.4.6.8., 9.8.3.3., 9.8.4.1., 9.8.4.4.
  - risers (see Risers)
  - runs (see Runs, stairs)
  - in secondary suites, 9.8.
  - slip-resistance, 3.4.6.1., 9.8.9.6.
  - spiral, 9.8.3.1., 9.8.4.7.
  - tolerances, 9.8.4.4.
  - treads (see Treads)
  - vertical rise, 3.4.6.3.
  - width, 9.8.2.1.
  - winders, 9.8.3.1., 9.8.4.6.
  - wood, 9.8.9.3., 9.8.9.4.
- Stairways
- as exits, 3.2.3.13., 3.4.1.4., 3.4.2.3., 3.4.3.3., 3.4.6.6., 9.9.4.7.
  - headroom clearance, 3.4.3.4., 9.8.2.2., 9.8.6.4.
  - landings, 3.4.3.3.
  - lighting, 3.2.7.1., 9.9.12.2., 9.34.2.3.
  - in means of egress, 9.9.1.1.
  - mezzanine egress, 9.9.8.6.
  - projections into, 9.8.7.6.
  - requirements, 3.3.1.14.
  - roof-top enclosures, 3.2.2.14.
  - weather protection, 3.3.5.4., 3.4.6.11.
  - width, 3.4.3.2., 3.4.3.3., 9.8.2.1.
- Standards, materials, 1.5.[A], 5.9.1.1.
- Standpipe systems
- in construction camps, 9.10.21.9.
  - design, 3.2.5.9.
  - fire department connection, 3.2.5.15.
  - fire hose connections, 3.2.5.10.
  - fire protection, 9.10.1.3.
  - installation, 3.2.5.9.
  - requirements, 3.2.5.8.
  - testing, 3.2.5.9.
  - trouble switch, 3.2.4.9.
- Staples
- for cladding, 9.27.5.4.
  - dimensions, 9.23.3.5., 9.26.2.4., 9.27.5.4.
  - for roofing, 9.26.2.4.
  - for sheathing, 9.23.3.5.
  - for stucco lath, 9.28.3.2.
  - for subflooring, 9.23.3.5.
  - for underlay, 9.30.2.3.
  - for wood strip flooring, 9.30.3.4.
- Stapling
- asphalt shingles, 9.26.7.4., 9.26.7.6., 9.26.8.5.
  - cladding, 9.27.5.4., 9.27.7.3.
  - plywood finish, 9.29.6.3.
  - roofing, 9.26.7.4., 9.26.7.6., 9.26.8.5., 9.26.9.5.

- sheathing, 9.23.3.5.
- sheathing membrane, 9.27.3.5.
- siding, 9.27.5.4., 9.27.7.3.
- subflooring, 9.23.3.5.
- underlay, 9.30.2.3.
- wood-frame construction, 9.23.3.
- wood shingles and shakes, 9.26.9.5., 9.27.7.3.
- wood strip flooring, 9.30.3.4.
- Static procedure, wind load calculations, 4.1.7.3.
- Steel
  - beams, 9.23.4.3., 9.23.8.2.
  - cold-formed, structural design basis, 4.3.4.2.
  - columns, 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5., 9.17.3.
  - design, 9.4.1.1.
  - door frames, 9.10.13.6.
  - fire protection, 3.2.2.3., 9.10.7.
  - flashing, 9.20.13.1., 9.27.3.7.
  - in foundations, 4.2.3.7.
  - in foundations, high-strength tendons in, 4.2.3.9.
  - framing, 9.24.
  - lintels, 9.20.5.2., 9.22.1.2.
  - protection from corrosion, 4.2.3.10., 5.1.4.2., 9.3.3.2., 9.17.3.3., 9.20.5.2., 9.20.16., 9.23.8.2.
  - roofing, 5.9.1.1., 9.26.13.
  - runners, 9.24.1.2., 9.24.1.3., 9.24.2.3., 9.24.2.4., 9.24.3.1., 9.24.3.2., 9.24.3.6.
  - siding, 5.9.1.1., 9.27.11.1.
  - structural design basis, 4.3.4.
  - studs, 9.24.1.1., 9.24.2.1., 9.24.2.2., 9.24.2.4., 9.24.2.5., 9.24.3.2.
- Stone
  - facings, 9.20.6.6.
  - masonry units, 9.20.2.5.
  - veneer, 9.20.8.5.
- Storage
  - of ammonium nitrate, 3.3.6.6.
  - of anhydrous ammonia, 3.3.6.3.
  - on the building site, 1.2.2.2.[A]
  - of dangerous goods, 3.3.6.2.
  - of flammable and combustible liquids, 3.3.6.4.
  - of flammable, toxic and oxidizing gases, 3.3.6.3.
  - of materials, 1.2.2.2.[A], 9.10.1.3.
  - outdoors, 3.2.3.21.
  - of tires, 3.3.6.5.
- Storage areas, theatres, 3.3.2.14.
- Storage bins
  - for ash, 6.9.4.1.
  - for solid fuel, 6.7.2.1.
- Storage buildings, self-service, 3.3.5.9., 9.10.9.20.
- application of Code, 3.9.1.2.
- definition, 3.9.1.1.
- fire safety, 3.9.2.
- floor areas, 3.9.3.
- occupancy classification, 3.9.1.3.
- sanitary facilities, 3.9.3.2.
- Storage garages
  - (see also Garages)
  - access through vestibule, 3.3.5.7.
  - in basements, 9.10.4.3.
  - in buildings with superimposed major occupancies, 3.2.2.7.
  - carbon monoxide alarms, 6.9.3.1.
  - cladding, 9.10.14.5.
  - construction, 9.10.14.5., 9.35.
  - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
  - doors, 9.9.6.4., 9.10.17.10.
  - exhaust to, 6.3.2.10.
  - exposing building face, 9.10.14.4., 9.10.14.5.
  - fire alarms, 3.2.4.1., 9.10.18.8.
  - fire separations, 3.3.5.6., 9.10.9.16.
  - headroom clearance, 3.3.1.8.
  - height, 3.3.5.4., 9.5.3.3., 9.9.3.4.
  - interconnection of ducting, 6.3.2.7., 9.33.6.7.
  - limiting distance, 9.10.14.4.
  - in low-hazard industrial occupancies (Group F, Division 3), 3.2.2.90.
  - open-air, 9.10.14.4., 9.10.18.8.
  - openings for vehicular ramps, 3.2.8.2.
  - pressure less than in adjoining occupancies, 6.3.1.4.
  - as separate buildings, 3.2.1.2.
  - standpipes requirement, 3.2.5.9.
  - unprotected openings in, 3.2.3.10., 9.10.14.4.
  - ventilation, 3.3.5.4., 6.3.1.4., 9.32.1.1.
- Storage lockers, 3.1.5.17.
- Storage racks, earthquake design, 4.1.8.18.
- Storage rooms
  - in assembly occupancy, 3.3.2.16.
  - for combustible garbage, 9.10.10.6.
  - electrical outlets in, 9.34.2.5.
  - fire alarm and detection systems, 9.10.18.6.
  - fire detectors in, 3.2.4.10., 9.10.18.4.
  - fire separations, 3.3.4.3., 3.6.2.5., 9.10.10.6.
  - for flammable and combustible liquids, 3.3.6.4.
  - flooring in areas of dangerous goods, 3.3.6.7.
- Storage tanks, 3.1.1.3.
- Storage-type service water heaters, 1.4.1.2.[A], 9.31.6.2., 9.31.6.3.
- Storefronts (see Fenestration)

**Storeys**

- below ground, 3.2.2.15.
- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- open-air, 1.4.1.2.[A], 3.2.1.5., 3.2.2.80., 3.2.2.90., 3.2.3.10., 3.2.5.4., 6.3.1.4., 9.10.14.4.
- sprinkler system requirements, 3.2.2.18.

**Stoves**

- (see also Cooktops)
- clearances, 9.10.22.2.
- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- design and installation standard, 9.33.5.2., 9.33.5.3.
- hearth-mounted, 9.22.10.
- installation, 9.10.22.1.

**Strandboard (see OSB)****Strapping, floor joists, 9.23.3.4., 9.23.9.3., 9.23.9.4.****Streets**

- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- exposing building face on, 9.10.14.4.
- fire access routes, 3.2.2.10.
- repairs following construction, 8.2.3.4.
- safe passage past construction sites, 8.2.3.1., 8.2.3.2.
- unprotected openings facing, 3.2.3.10.

**Stress reversal, 4.1.3.2.****Structural design**

- Code requirements, 4
- housing and small buildings, 9.4.
- limit states design, 4.1.3.
- and structural loads, 5.2.2.

**Structural drawings, 2.2.4.3.[C]****Structural fire protection, 3.2.2.3., 3.2.3.9., 9.10.8.****Structural loads and design procedures, 4.1., 5.2.2.,**

- 5.9.3.2., 9.4.
- exterior insulation finish systems, 5.9.4.1.

**Structural movement**

- mechanical systems and equipment, 4.1.8.18., 6.2.1.4., 9.33.4.7.
- service water heaters, 9.31.6.2.

**Structures, special, 3.2.2.2.****Stucco**

- aggregate for, 9.28.2.2., 9.28.5.1.
- application, 9.28.6.
- fasteners, 9.28.3.1., 9.28.3.2.
- flashing for, 9.28.1.5.
- ground clearance, 9.28.1.4.
- for housing and small buildings, 9.28.
- installation, 9.28.1.2., 9.28.1.3., 9.28.3.1., 9.28.3.2., 9.28.6.
- lath (see Lath, stucco)
- materials, 9.28.2., 9.28.5.

- mixes, 9.28.5.1.
- mixing, 9.28.5.3.
- nails for, 9.28.3.
- pigments, 9.28.5.2.
- sheathing beneath, 9.28.1.1., 9.28.4.2.
- staples for, 9.28.3.
- thickness, 9.28.6.

**Studs, steel**

- bracing and lateral support, 9.24.1.5.
- dimensions, 9.24.2.1., 9.24.2.5.
- fastening, 9.24.1.4., 9.24.3.6.
- in fire-rated walls, 9.24.2.4., 9.24.3.2.
- in housing and small buildings, 9.24.
- metal thickness, 9.24.1.3., 9.24.2.2., 9.24.2.4., 9.24.2.5.
- notching and drilling, 9.23.5.3.
- at openings, 9.24.2.4., 9.24.3.5., 9.24.3.7.
- orientation, 9.24.3.3.
- spacing, 9.24.2.1., 9.24.2.5.
- standard for, 9.24.1.2.

**Studs, wood**

- bracing, 9.23.10.2.
- continuity, 9.23.10.4.
- at corners and intersections, 9.23.10.5.
- dimensions, 9.23.10.1.
- lateral support, 9.23.10.2.
- lumber grade, 9.3.2.1.
- notching and drilling, 9.23.5.3.
- at openings, 9.23.10.6.
- orientation, 9.23.10.3.
- spacing, 9.23.10.1.
- standard for, 9.24.1.2.

**Subfloor**

- depressurization, 9.13.4., 9.13.4.3.
- direction of installation, 9.23.15.4.
- edge support, 9.23.15.3.
- lumber, 9.23.15.7.
- materials, 9.23.15.2., 9.23.15.7.
- nailing, 9.23.15.6.
- thickness, 9.23.15.5.
- wood-frame construction, 9.23.15.

**Subsurface investigation, 1.4.1.2.[A], 2.2.4.6.[C], 4.2.2., 4.2.4.2.****Suites**

- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- doors and door hardware, 3.3.1.13.
- fire separations, 9.10.9.13., 9.10.9.14.
- separation of, 3.3.1.1.
- smoke control measures, 3.2.6.2.

**Sump pits, 9.14.5.2.**

- Sumps, evaporative air coolers and air washers, 6.3.2.16.
- Supervisory signal and switch for alarms, 3.2.4.9., 3.2.6.7.
- Supplemental energy dissipation  
 definitions and analysis, 4.1.8.21.  
 design considerations, 4.1.8.22.
- Supply air  
 capacity, 9.33.5.1., 9.33.6.11.  
 crawl spaces, 9.32.3.7.  
 diffusers, 9.33.6.10., 9.33.6.11.  
 duct clearances, 3.6.5.6.  
 ducts, 1.4.1.2.[A], 6.3.2.7., 9.32.3.4., 9.32.3.8., 9.33.6.5., 9.33.6.11.  
 fans, 9.32.3.4., 9.32.3.5., 9.32.3.6.  
 outlets, 9.32.3.5., 9.32.3.6., 9.33.6.10., 9.33.6.11.  
 systems, 9.32.3.4., 9.32.3.6., 9.33.5.  
 tempering, 6.3.2.8., 9.32.3.4., 9.32.3.5., 9.32.3.8., 9.32.3.11.  
 ventilation, 9.32.3.4.
- Supporting construction, fire-resistance rating, 3.1.7.5.
- Supports  
 beams, 9.23.8.  
 cladding, 9.20.5., 9.23.10.5., 9.24.3.4.  
 combustible construction, 3.1.8.2., 9.10.9.8.  
 excavations, 4.2.5.3.  
 firewalls, 3.1.10.1., 4.1.5.17.  
 floors, 3.2.1.4., 9.23.4.1., 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.4., 9.23.8.3., 9.30.1.3.  
 hearths, 9.22.5.2.  
 interior finishes, 9.23.10.5., 9.24.3.4.  
 joists, 9.23.14.7.  
 noncombustible construction, 9.10.8.4.  
 pipes, 6.7.1.1., 9.33.8.1.  
 walls, 9.23.9.8.
- Surface temperature  
 of pipes, 6.7.1.4., 9.33.8.2.  
 of radiators, 6.7.1.3., 9.33.7.2.
- Swinging doors, 3.8.3.6.
- Symbols, 1.2.2.1., 1.4.2.1.[A]
- Systems  
 characteristics, 1.2.2.1.[A]  
 storage, 1.2.2.2.[A]  
 used, 1.2.2.3.[A]
- T**
- Tablet arms, 3.3.2.4.
- Tape, sealing, 3.1.5.2., 3.6.5.3., 6.3.2.19., 9.33.6.3.
- Telephones, 3.2.4.22., 3.2.6.7., 3.4.6.17., 3.8.3.20.
- Temperature  
 indoor design, 5.2.1.2., 5.3.1.2., 5.5.1.2., 9.33.3.1.  
 outdoor design, 1.1.3.1., 5.2.1.1., 5.3.1.2., 5.5.1.2., 6.2.1.2., 9.33.3.2., 9.33.5.1.  
 of pipes, 6.7.1.4., 9.33.8.2.  
 of radiators, 6.7.1.3., 9.33.7.2.  
 soils, 5.2.1.1., 5.2.1.3., 9.12.2.2., 9.16.2.2.  
 supply air, 9.33.6.11.  
 transfer calculations, 5.2.1.3.
- Temperature controls  
 HVAC systems, 9.36.3.6.  
 indoor pools, 9.36.4.6.  
 service water heating systems, 9.36.4.5.  
 Tempering of makeup air, 6.3.2.8.,
- Tents  
 clearance to flammable material, 3.1.6.4.  
 clearance to other structures, 3.1.6.3.  
 electrical systems, 3.1.6.7.  
 fire protection, 9.10.1.3.  
 fire safety restrictions, 3.1.6.2.  
 flame resistance, 3.1.6.5.  
 means of egress, 3.1.6.1.  
 roof coverings, 3.1.15.2.
- Termites, protection against, 4.3.1.3., 9.3.2.9., 9.12.1.1., 9.15.5.1.
- Tests  
 building fire safety, 3.2.9.1.  
 fire-protection rating, 3.1.8.4., 9.10.3.1.  
 fire-resistance rating, 3.1.7.1., 9.10.3.1.  
 flame-spread rating, 3.1.12.1., 3.1.13.4., 6.9.1.1., 9.10.3.2., 9.33.6.3., 9.33.6.4.  
 load, 4.1.1.5., 4.2.4.1., 9.23.14.11.  
 roof coverings, 3.1.15.1.  
 smoke developed classification, 3.1.12.1.  
 smoke movement in high buildings, 3.2.6.9.  
 sound transmission, 5.8.1.2., 9.11.1.2.  
 vapour permeance, 9.25.4.2.
- Theatres, 1.4.1.2.[A], 3.3.2.14.
- Thermal barriers  
 for foamed plastic, 9.10.17.10.  
 in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.14., 3.1.5.15.
- Thermal breaks, 5.9.2.4., 9.7.3.3.
- Thermal bridging, 5.3.1.3., 9.25.1., 9.25.5.1.
- Thermal insulation systems, 6.5.
- Thermal resistance  
 building assemblies, 9.36.2.4., 9.36.2.6.  
 building assemblies below grade or in contact with

- ground, 9.36.2.8.
- location and installation of materials, 5.3.1.3.
- materials in the building envelope, 9.25.5.1.
- replacement options, 9.36.2.11.
- requirements, 5.3.1., 9.25.1.
- windows, doors and skylights, 9.36.2.7.

Thermal systems, solar, 9.36.3.11.

Ticket booths, 6.3.1.4.

Tile

- clay, 9.23.4.5.
- concrete, 9.23.4.5.

Tile, drainage, 9.14.3.

Tile, floor, 9.30.2.1., 9.30.2.2., 9.30.6.

Tile, roof

- concrete, 5.9.1.1., 9.26.2.1.
- eave protection, 9.26.5.1.
- installation, 9.26.17.

Tile, wall

- installation, 9.29.10.1.
- moisture-resistant backing, 9.29.10.4.

Tires, storage, 3.3.6.5.

Top plates, walls, 9.23.5.4., 9.23.11.4.

Towers

- earthquake loads and effects, 4.1.8.1.
- wind loads, 4.1.7.11.

Toxic gases, storage, 3.3.6.3.

Trade shows, 3.1.2.3.

Traffic control, construction sites, 8.2.4.

Transformer vaults, 3.6.2.7., 9.10.1.3.

Transparent panels, 3.3.1.19., 3.4.1.8., 9.6.1.4., 9.7.2.1.

Transponder, for fire alarm, 3.2.7.10.

Travel distance

- banks and mercantile facilities, 3.4.6.17.
- to egress doorways, 3.3.1.5., 3.3.1.6.
- to exit, 3.4.2.1., 3.4.2.3., 3.4.2.4., 9.9.8.2.
- in fire compartments, 3.3.3.5.
- measurement of, 9.9.8.1.
- mezzanines, 9.9.8.6.
- and number of required exits, 9.9.8.2.
- rooms and suites, 9.9.7.4., 9.9.7.6.
- to unlocked doors, 3.4.6.18.

Treads

- dimensions, 3.3.1.16., 3.4.6.8., 9.8.4., 9.8.4.3.
- finishes, 9.8.9.6.
- nosings, 9.8.4.8.
- rectangular, 9.8.3.1., 9.8.4.1., 9.8.4.2.
- slip-resistance, 3.4.6.1., 9.8.9.6.
- tapered, 3.3.1.16., 3.4.6.9., 9.8.3.1., 9.8.4.1., 9.8.4.3., 9.8.4.4.

- thickness, 9.8.9.5.
- uniformity and tolerances, 9.8.4.4.
- in winders, 9.8.4.6.

Treatment occupancy (see Care, treatment or detention occupancy)

Trench, for piping of flammable liquids, 6.9.1.2.

Trim, for windows, doors and skylights, 9.7.6.2.

Trouble signals, 3.2.4.8., 3.2.4.9., 3.2.6.7.

Trusses

- design, 9.4.1.1., 9.4.2.2., 9.23.14.11.
- lumber grade, 9.3.2.1.
- maximum deflections, 9.23.14.11.
- snow loads, 9.4.2.2.

Tubing for pneumatic controls, 3.1.5.2., 3.6.4.3.

Turnstiles, 3.4.3.3., 9.9.5.4., 9.9.5.5.

Tying (see Anchorage)

## **U**

Underground ducts, 6.3.2.12., 9.33.6.7.

Underground walkways, 3.1.13.9., 3.2.3.20., 3.2.7.3., 9.9.12.3.

Underlay

- fastening, 9.30.2.3.
- for flooring, 9.30.2.
- hardboard, 9.30.2.2.
- installation, 9.26.6.2., 9.26.10.2., 9.30.2.3.
- materials, 9.26.6.1., 9.30.2.2., 9.30.2.5.
- material standards, 9.30.2.2.
- nailing, 9.30.2.3.
- OSB, 9.30.2.2.
- particleboard, 9.30.2.2.
- plywood, 9.30.2.2.
- roofing, 9.26.6., 9.26.10.2.
- beneath shakes, 9.26.10.2.
- beneath shingles, 9.26.6.
- stapling, 9.30.2.3.
- thickness, 9.30.2.2.

Unit heaters, 1.4.1.2.[A]

Universal washrooms, 3.8.3.12.

Unprotected openings

- (see also Openings)
- area increase, 3.2.3.12.
- definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
- in exposing building face, 3.2.3.7.
- in exterior walls, 3.2.3.1.
- in floors, 9.10.1.3.
- maximum area, 9.10.14.4.
- and spatial separation between buildings, 9.10.14., 9.10.15.

unlimited, 3.2.3.10.  
 in wall exposed to another wall, 3.2.3.14.  
 Unsafe conditions, 1.1.1.1.[A], 1.4.1.2.[A]  
 Unstable liquids, 1.4.1.2.[A]  
 Unusual structures, 3.2.2.2.  
 Urinals, accessible design, 3.8.2.8., 3.8.3.14.

## V

### Vacuum cleaning systems

emergency shutdown, 3.2.4.13.  
 fire safety shutdown, 9.10.18.7.  
 penetrating fire separations, 3.1.9.5., 9.10.9.6.  
 suites served, 9.10.9.19.

### Vapour

diffusion, 5.1.1.1., 5.2.1.2., 5.2.1.3., 5.5., 5.9.4.1.,  
 9.25.4.1., 9.25.5.1.  
 permeance, 5.5.1.2., 9.25.4.2., 9.25.5.1.  
 transfer, 5.1.1.1., 5.2.1.2., 5.2.1.3.

### Vapour barriers

and dampproofing, 9.13.2.5.  
 definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]  
 in housing and small buildings, 9.25.4.  
 installation, 5.5.1.2., 9.23.2.2., 9.25.4.3.  
 in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.2.  
 permeance, 5.5.1.2., 9.25.4.2.  
 products used, 9.25.4.3.  
 required resistance to vapour diffusion, 5.5.1.1.  
 requirements, 9.25.4.1.  
 standards for, 5.9.1.1., 9.25.4.2.

### Vapour pressure, 5.5.1.1.

(see also Flammable liquids)

### Vehicle guardrails, 4.1.5.15., 9.8.8.4.

### Vehicular passageways, 3.1.13.2., 3.2.3.18.

### Vehicular ramps, 3.2.8.2., 3.3.1.18., 9.8.8.4.

### Vehicular traffic, construction sites, 8.2.3.1., 8.2.4.1.

### Veneer

flashing, 5.6.2.1., 9.20.13.3.  
 masonry, 5.6.1.2., 9.20.6.4., 9.20.8.5., 9.20.9.5., 9.20.12.3.

### Vent connectors, 1.4.1.2.[A]

Ventilating systems (see Heating, ventilating  
 and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems and  
 equipment)

### Ventilation

of air contaminants, 6.3.1.6.  
 attic or roof spaces, 6.3.1.2., 9.19.1.  
 capacity, 9.32.2.3., 9.32.3.3.  
 crawl spaces, 6.3.1.2., 9.18.3., 9.18.3.1., 9.18.3.2.  
 definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]

direct-vent, 9.32.3.8.

dwelling units, 6.3.1.1., 9.32.

electrical equipment vaults, 3.6.2.7.

exhaust, 3.3.1.20., 9.10.9.18., 9.32.3.6., 9.32.3.13.

exhaust ducts and outlets, 6.3.2.10.

garages, 3.3.5.4.

housing and small buildings, 9.32.

mechanical, 6.3.1.1., 6.3.1.4. - 6.9.1.2., 9.32.2.3.,  
 9.32.3., 9.32.3.3. - 9.32.3.6.

natural, 6.3.1.3., 9.32.2.2.

outlets, 9.32.3.5., 9.32.3.6.

requirements, 6.2.2., 6.3.1.1., 9.32.1.2., 9.32.2.1.,  
 9.32.3.1.

residential, 6.3.1.1.

restaurants, 6.3.1.7.

secondary suites, 9.32.3.4., 9.37.2.17.

storage garages, 3.3.5.7., 6.3.1.4., 9.32.1.1.

windows for, 9.32.2.2.

### Venting

air space in building envelopes, 9.25.5.1., 9.27.2.2.

attic or roof spaces, 5.3.1.2., 6.3.1.2., 9.19.1.

chimneys, 9.21., 9.33.10.1.

combustion products, 6.3.3.1., 9.32.3.8., 9.33.10.1.

crawl spaces, 6.3.1.2., 9.18.3., 9.18.3.1., 9.18.3.2.

explosion relief devices, 3.3.1.20.

firefighting, 3.2.8.7.

firefighting in high buildings, 3.2.6.6., 3.2.6.9.

heating appliances, 9.21., 9.33.5.2., 9.33.5.3.,  
 9.33.10.1.

laundry-drying equipment, 9.32.1.3.

mansard or gambrel roofs, 9.19.1.4.

soffits, 9.19.1.2., 9.19.1.3., 9.25.2.4.

### Vents

area, 9.19.1.2.

gas, 9.33.10.1.

installation, 9.19.1.2.

in stair shafts, 3.2.6.2.

standard for, 9.19.1.2.

### Vertical service spaces

application of Code, 3.6.1.1., 3.6.3.1.

combustible piping in, 3.1.9.5.

definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]

for dumbwaiters, 3.5.3.2.

elevator machinery, 3.5.3.3.

exhaust ducts, 3.6.3.4., 9.10.9.18.

fire dampers, 9.10.13.13.

fire protection, 9.10.1.3.

fire separations, 3.6.3.1.

flame-spread rating, 3.1.13.2.

- penetrating floor assemblies, 3.2.8.1.
  - Vestibules
    - (see also Lobbies)
    - access to storage garages, 3.3.5.7.
    - barrier-free doors, 3.8.3.6.
    - and closure devices, 3.1.8.19.
    - elevators for use by firefighters, 3.2.6.5.
    - garages, 3.3.5.4.
    - high buildings, 3.1.13.7.
    - horizontal exits, 3.4.6.10.
    - interconnected floor space, 3.2.8.4.
  - Vibrations
    - combustible isolation connector, 3.6.5.2., 6.3.2.18.
    - floors, 9.23.4.1., 9.23.4.2.
    - limit states design, 4.1.3.6.
  - Visual disability, 3.3.1.9.
  - Visual signal devices, 3.2.4.19.
  - Voice communication systems
    - central alarm and control facility, 3.2.6.7.
    - emergency power supply, 3.2.7.8.
    - high buildings, 3.2.6.8.
    - requirements, 3.2.4.22.
    - speakers, 3.2.4.22.
    - use of alarm circuitry, 3.2.4.18.
- W**
- Waferboard
    - as cladding, 5.9.1.1., 9.27.2.4., 9.27.3.6., 9.27.5., 9.27.10.
    - fire blocks, 9.10.16.3.
    - fire protection of soffits, 9.10.12.4.
    - fire stops, 3.1.11.7.
    - as interior finish, 9.29.9.
    - material, 9.3.2.4.
    - material standard, 5.9.1.1., 9.23.15.2., 9.23.16.2., 9.23.17.2., 9.27.10.1., 9.29.9.1., 9.30.2.2.
    - as roof sheathing, 9.3.2.4., 9.23.3.5., 9.23.16.
    - as siding, 9.27.3.6., 9.27.5., 9.27.10.
    - as subflooring, 9.3.2.4., 9.23.3.5., 9.23.15.2., 9.23.15.5.
    - thickness, 9.3.2.7.
    - as underlay, 9.30.2.
    - as wall sheathing, 9.3.2.4., 9.23.3.5., 9.23.10.2., 9.23.17.2., 9.23.17.5.
  - Walk-in coolers/freezers, 3.1.4.2., 3.1.5.7., 9.10.17.10.
  - Walks, moving, 3.2.8.2., 3.8.2.3., 3.8.2.4., 9.8.1.4.
  - Walkways
    - accessible path of travel, 3.8.3.3.
    - between buildings, 3.2.3.19.
    - construction camps, 9.10.21.4.
    - construction sites, 8.2.1.1.
    - definition, 1.4.1.2.[A]
    - exterior, 3.8.3.3., 9.9.4.2., 9.9.9.3., 9.10.8.8., 9.10.17.4.
    - fire protection, 9.10.1.3.
    - smoke detectors, 3.2.4.11.
    - underground, 3.1.13.9., 3.2.3.20., 3.2.7.3., 9.9.12.3.
  - Wall membranes, 9.10.5.
  - Wall panels
    - braced (see Braced wall panels)
    - factory-assembled, 3.1.5.7.
  - Wall plates, 9.23.3.4., 9.23.11.
  - Walls
    - (see also Walls, exterior)
    - air barrier systems, 9.25.3.
    - anchorage, 9.20.11., 9.23.3.4., 9.35.4.3.
    - area, calculating, 9.36.2.3.
    - bracing, 9.23.10.2., 9.23.13.
    - in carports, 9.35.4.1., 9.35.4.3.
    - cladding, 9.27.
    - continuity of insulation, 9.36.2.5.
    - exposed to adjoining roof, 3.2.3.15., 9.10.12.2.
    - fire blocks in, 9.10.16.2.
    - fire-resistance rating, 3.2.3.7., 3.2.3.11., 9.10.8.3., 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5.
    - firewalls (see Firewalls)
    - foamed plastics in, 9.10.17.10.
    - foundations, 4.2., 9.15.4.
    - framing, 9.23.10., 9.24.
    - garages, 9.35.4.1.
    - as guards, 4.1.5.16.
    - in health facilities, 3.3.3.5.
    - height, 9.20.6.
    - intersecting, anchorage, 9.20.11.
    - lateral support, 9.20.10., 9.23.10.2.
    - loadbearing, 3.2.1.4., 9.10.8.3., 9.23.9.8., 9.23.10.1., 9.23.10.2., 9.23.10.6., 9.23.12.2., 9.23.12.3., 9.24.1.1.
    - masonry, 5.6.1.2., 9.20., 9.25.3.4.
    - masonry veneer, 5.6.1.2., 9.20.6.4.
    - non-loadbearing, 9.23.9.8., 9.23.10.1., 9.23.10.6., 9.23.12.1., 9.24.
    - openings in loadbearing, 9.23.10.6., 9.23.12.2., 9.23.12.3.
    - openings in non-loadbearing, 9.23.10.6., 9.23.12.1., 9.24.2.4., 9.24.3.5., 9.24.3.7.
    - in public corridors, 9.10.17.5.
    - recesses, 9.20.7.
    - retaining, 9.3.2.9., 9.4.4.5., 9.4.4.6.



- sheathing, 9.23.13., 9.23.17., 9.27.3.4., 9.27.3.5.
- steel stud, 9.24.
- support on framed floors, 9.23.9.8.
- supports, 9.23.9.8.
- thermal insulation, 9.25.1.1.
- thickness, 9.20.6.
- wind loads, 4.1.7.5., 4.1.7.6.
- Walls, exterior**
  - in combustible construction, 3.1.4.8.
  - continuity of insulation, 9.36.2.5.
  - enclosing attic or roof space, 3.2.3.3.
  - exposed to another wall, 3.2.3.14., 9.10.12.3.
  - fire-resistance rating, 3.1.7.2., 3.1.7.3., 3.2.3.7., 3.2.3.11., 9.10.3.1., 9.10.3.3., 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5.
  - at firewall, 3.1.10.6.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.5., 3.1.5.6.
  - restrictions on combustible projections, 3.2.3.6., 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5.
  - thickness, 9.20.6.1.
- Walls, interior**
  - airtightness, 9.36.2.10.
  - finish, 9.29.
  - not fire separations, 9.10.12.3.
  - thickness, 9.20.6.3.
- Wall studs (see Studs, steel; Studs, wood)**
- Warehouses**
  - door swing, 3.3.1.11.
  - loads on floor or roof, 4.1.5.3.
  - self-storage, 3.3.5.9., 9.9.6.4.
  - Warm air outlets, 9.33.6.10., 9.33.6.11.
  - Warning lights, construction sites, 8.2.3.5.
  - Wash fountains, circular, 3.7.2.3.
- Washrooms**
  - (see also Bathrooms)
  - accessible, 3.8.2.8., 3.8.3.9., 3.8.3.11., 3.8.3.15.
  - emergency lighting, 3.2.7.3.
  - floor drains, 3.7.2.7.
  - requirements, 3.7.2.2.
  - signage, 3.8.3.9.
  - surface protection, 3.7.2.6.
  - universal, 3.8.3.12.
- Waste material**
  - chutes, 8.2.5.4.
  - enclosures, 8.2.5.3.
  - removal, 8.2.5.2.
- Water**
  - (see also Groundwater)
  - accumulation, 5.6.2.2., 5.7.1.1.
  - drainage, 5.6.2.2., 9.14.
  - drainage disposal, 9.14.5.
  - in excavations, 9.12.1.2.
  - flooring resistant to, 9.30.1.2.
  - ingress, 5.7.1.1.
  - protection against, application of Code, 9.13.1.1.
  - protection against, in exterior insulation finish systems, 5.9.4.1.
  - protection against, in fenestration, 5.9.3.5.
  - protection against hydrostatic pressure, 5.7.2.
  - protection from groundwater, 5.7.3.
  - required protection against, 5.7.1.2.
  - surface, 5.7., 5.7.1.1.
- Water closets**
  - bathtubs, 3.7.2.9.
  - doorways, 9.5.5.2.
  - in dwelling units, 9.31.4.1.
  - floor drains, 3.7.2.7.
  - grab bars, 3.7.2.8.
  - for persons with disabilities, 3.8.3.13.
  - requirements, 3.7.2.2.
  - stalls, 3.8.3.11.
  - surface protection, 3.7.2.6.
- Waterflow detecting devices, 3.2.4.4., 3.2.4.7., 3.2.4.15., 3.2.5.14., 3.2.6.7.**
- Water heaters, solar, 9.36.4.3.**
- Waterproof flooring, 9.30.1.2.**
- Waterproofing**
  - floors-on-ground, 9.13.3.1., 9.13.3.5.
  - installation, 5.6.1.2., 9.13.3.4.
  - installation standards, 9.26.15.1.
  - material standards, 5.9.1.1., 9.13.3.2., 9.26.2.1.
  - preparation of surface, 9.13.3.3.
  - protection from groundwater, 5.7.3.3.
  - requirement for, 9.13.3.1.
  - roofs, 5.6.1.2., 9.13.3.1., 9.26.2.1.
  - walls, 9.13.3.1., 9.13.3.3., 9.13.3.4.
- Waterproof interior wall finish, 9.29.2.**
- Water supply**
  - for firefighting, 3.2.5.7., 3.2.5.9., 3.2.7.9.
  - hot water, 9.31.4.2.
  - potable water, 9.31.3.
- Water supply valves, 3.2.4.9.**
- Water systems**
  - dwelling units, 9.31.3.
  - potable water, 9.31.3.1.
- Water treatment, evaporative cooling systems, 6.3.2.15.**
- Weep holes, 9.20.13.5., 9.20.13.6., 9.20.13.8.**
- Welding operations room, 3.3.1.25.**

**Wells**

- dry, 9.14.5.3.
- water supply, 9.14.6.2.

Wheelchair spaces, and path of travel, 3.8.2.3., 3.8.3.21.

Wheelchair turning space, universal washrooms, 3.8.3.12.

Winders, 9.8.3.1., 9.8.4.1., 9.8.4.4., 9.8.4.6.

**Wind load**

- and air barrier systems, 9.25.3.2.
- anchorage of building frames, 9.23.6.1.
- bracing to resist, 9.23.13.
- calculation of, 4.1.7., 5.2.1.3., 5.2.2.2.
- dynamic effects, 4.1.7.2.
- dynamic procedure, 4.1.7.8.
- environmental separation, 5.1.4.1.
- exterior ornamentations, equipment and appendages, 4.1.7.11.
- external pressure coefficients, 4.1.7.5.
- external pressure coefficients, low buildings, 4.1.7.6.
- fasteners for sheathing or subflooring, 9.23.3.5.
- full and partial, 4.1.7.9.
- interior walls and partitions, 4.1.7.10.
- internal pressure coefficient, 4.1.7.7.
- pressure differences due to, 4.1.7.10., 5.4.1.2.
- roof sheathing, 9.23.16.1.
- specified, 4.1.7.1.
- static procedure, 4.1.7.3.
- and structural design, 4.1.7.
- structural strength, 9.4.1.1., 9.6.1.3.
- topographic factor, 4.1.7.4., 9.6.1.3.
- wind tunnel procedure, 4.1.7.12.

**Windows**

- (see also Closures; Fenestration; Glass; Skylights)
- access for firefighting, 9.10.20.1.
- airtightness, 5.9.1.1., 5.9.2.3., 9.7.4., 9.36.2.9., 9.36.2.10.
- barriers or railings with, 3.3.1.19.
- in bedrooms, 9.9.10.1.
- caulking and sealing, 9.7.4., 9.20.13.11., 9.27.4.
- as closures, 3.1.8.5.
- dimensions, 9.32.2.2.
- in exits, 9.9.4.5.
- in exposing building faces, 9.10.14.4., 9.10.15.4.
- flashing, 9.20.13.3., 9.20.13.4., 9.20.13.12., 9.27.3.8.
- glass thickness, 9.6.1.3.
- for housing and small buildings, 9.7.
- installation, 9.7.6.
- manufactured and pre-assembled, 9.7.4.

- as means of egress, 9.7.2.2.
- for natural ventilation, 9.32.2.2.
- in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.4.
- not a means of egress, 9.9.2.3.
- opening into window wells, 9.9.10.1.
- openings, 9.8.8.1., 9.9.10.1.
- protection of, 3.3.4.8.
- protection in public areas, 9.8.8.1.
- protection in residential occupancy, 9.8.8.1.
- requirements, 9.7.2.2.
- resistance to forced entry, 9.7.5.3.
- sills, 9.20.13.12., 9.27.3.8.
- standard for, 5.9.1.1., 5.9.2.2., 9.7.4.
- thermal breaks, 5.9.2.4., 9.7.3.3.
- thermal resistance calculation, 9.36.2.11.
- thermal transmittance (U-value), 9.7.3.3.
- unobstructed opening area, 9.9.10.1., 9.32.2.2.
- watertightness, 5.9.1.1., 5.9.2.3., 9.7.4.
- wind load resistance, 5.2.2.2., 9.7.4.

Window walls (see Fenestration)

Window wells, 9.9.10.1., 9.14.6.3.

Wind tunnel procedure, 4.1.7.12.

**Wired glass**

- area limits, 3.1.8.18.
- area limits waived, 3.1.8.19.
- as closure, 9.10.13.5.
- in exits, 3.2.3.13., 9.9.4.3.
- in fire separations, 3.1.8.16.
- in guards, 9.8.8.7.
- not to be used as closures, 3.2.3.5.
- temperature rise limits waived, 3.1.8.19.
- in transparent panels and doors, 3.3.1.19.
- in unprotected openings, 3.2.3.12., 9.10.14.4.
- uses, 9.6.1.4.
- in windows, doors and skylights, 5.9.1.1., 5.9.2.1.

**Wires and cables**

- in combustible construction, 3.1.4.3.
- electrical, 3.2.6.5., 9.34., 9.34.1.5.
- in fire separations, 9.10.9.6.
- in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.21.
- penetrating fire separations, 3.1.9.3.
- in plenums, 3.6.4.3.
- protection of electrical conductors, 3.2.7.10.
- storage, 3.3.6.2.

**Wood**

- bracing, 9.23.13.
- cant strips, 9.26.4.6., 9.26.4.7., 9.26.11.10.
- columns, 9.10.14.5., 9.10.15.5., 9.17.4., 9.35.4.2.
- design and construction, 9.23.

- door frames, 9.10.13.3.
- doors, 9.7.5.2.
- fire-resistance rating, 9.10.6.2.
- fire-retardant-treated (see Fire-retardant-treated wood)
- floor beams, 9.23.8.1.
- floor joists, 9.23.9.
- flooring, 9.30.3., 9.30.4.
- floors-on-ground, 9.16.5.
- floor supports, 9.23.4.1., 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.4., 9.23.8.3., 9.30.1.3.
- foundations, 4.2.3.1., 4.2.3.2., 9.15.1.1., 9.15.2.4.
- in heavy timber construction, 3.1.4.7.
- in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.2., 3.1.5.3., 3.1.5.5., 3.1.5.8., 3.1.5.10.
- preservative treatment, 4.2.3.2., 9.8.9.3., 9.23.2.2., 9.23.2.3.
- roofs, 3.1.14.1., 9.23.4.1., 9.23.4.2., 9.23.4.5., 9.23.16.
- shingles and shakes, 9.26.2.1., 9.26.2.3., 9.26.3.1., 9.26.9., 9.26.10., 9.27.7.
- siding, 9.27.6., 9.27.7., 9.27.8., 9.27.9., 9.27.10.
- stairs, 9.8.9.3., 9.8.9.4.
- structural design basis, 4.3.1.
- Wood blocking**
  - cladding, 9.23.10.5., 9.27.5.2.
  - doors, 9.7.5.2.
  - with handrails, 9.8.7.7.
  - interior finishing materials, 9.23.10.5.
  - joists, 9.23.9.3., 9.23.9.4., 9.23.14.9.
  - nailing, 9.23.3.4.
  - in noncombustible construction, 3.1.5.2.
  - rafters and joists, 9.23.14.7.
  - roof edges, 9.23.16.6., 9.23.16.7.
  - subflooring, 9.23.15.3.
  - walls, 9.23.9.8., 9.23.10.2.
- Wood-burning appliances**
  - chimney liners, 9.21.3.9., 9.22.2.3.
  - chimneys and flues, 6.3.3.2., 6.3.3.3., 9.21.1.1., 9.21.2.1., 9.21.2.2., 9.33.10.2.
  - ducts serving, 3.6.5.8., 9.33.6.13.
  - factory-built fireplaces, 9.22.1.4., 9.22.8.1.
  - hearth-mounted stoves, 9.22.10.
  - inserts, 9.22.10.
  - installation, 3.6.2.1.
  - installation standard, 6.2.1.5., 9.22.10.2., 9.31.6.2.
  - masonry fireplaces, 9.22.
  - product standards, 9.22.2.3., 9.22.8.1., 9.22.10.1., 9.33.5.3.
  - protection against depressurization, 9.32.3.8.
  - venting, 6.3.3.1., 9.33.10.1.
- Wood-frame construction**
  - alternative structural components, 9.23.1.1.
  - beams to support floors, 9.23.8.
  - bracing for earthquake and wind loads, 9.23.13.
  - fasteners, 9.23.3.
  - floor joists, 9.23.9.
  - framing over openings, 9.23.12.
  - housing and small buildings, 9.23.
  - maximum spans, 9.23.4.
  - notching and drilling, 9.23.5.
  - roof and ceiling framing, 9.23.14.
  - roof sheathing, 9.23.16.
  - sill plates, 9.23.7.
  - subflooring, 9.23.15.
  - wall plates, 9.23.11.
  - wall sheathing, 9.23.17.
  - wall studs, 9.23.10.
- Wood products**
  - dimensions, 9.3.2.6., 9.3.2.7.
  - for housing and small buildings, 9.3.2.
  - preservative treatment, 9.3.2.9.
  - protection against moisture, 9.3.2.9.
  - undersized, 9.3.2.8.

## Y

- Yard, as access for firefighters, 9.10.20.3.